



This is a digital copy of a book that was preserved for generations on library shelves before it was carefully scanned by Google as part of a project to make the world's books discoverable online.

It has survived long enough for the copyright to expire and the book to enter the public domain. A public domain book is one that was never subject to copyright or whose legal copyright term has expired. Whether a book is in the public domain may vary country to country. Public domain books are our gateways to the past, representing a wealth of history, culture and knowledge that's often difficult to discover.

Marks, notations and other marginalia present in the original volume will appear in this file - a reminder of this book's long journey from the publisher to a library and finally to you.

Usage guidelines

Google is proud to partner with libraries to digitize public domain materials and make them widely accessible. Public domain books belong to the public and we are merely their custodians. Nevertheless, this work is expensive, so in order to keep providing this resource, we have taken steps to prevent abuse by commercial parties, including placing technical restrictions on automated querying.

We also ask that you:

- + *Make non-commercial use of the files* We designed Google Book Search for use by individuals, and we request that you use these files for personal, non-commercial purposes.
- + *Refrain from automated querying* Do not send automated queries of any sort to Google's system: If you are conducting research on machine translation, optical character recognition or other areas where access to a large amount of text is helpful, please contact us. We encourage the use of public domain materials for these purposes and may be able to help.
- + *Maintain attribution* The Google "watermark" you see on each file is essential for informing people about this project and helping them find additional materials through Google Book Search. Please do not remove it.
- + *Keep it legal* Whatever your use, remember that you are responsible for ensuring that what you are doing is legal. Do not assume that just because we believe a book is in the public domain for users in the United States, that the work is also in the public domain for users in other countries. Whether a book is still in copyright varies from country to country, and we can't offer guidance on whether any specific use of any specific book is allowed. Please do not assume that a book's appearance in Google Book Search means it can be used in any manner anywhere in the world. Copyright infringement liability can be quite severe.

About Google Book Search

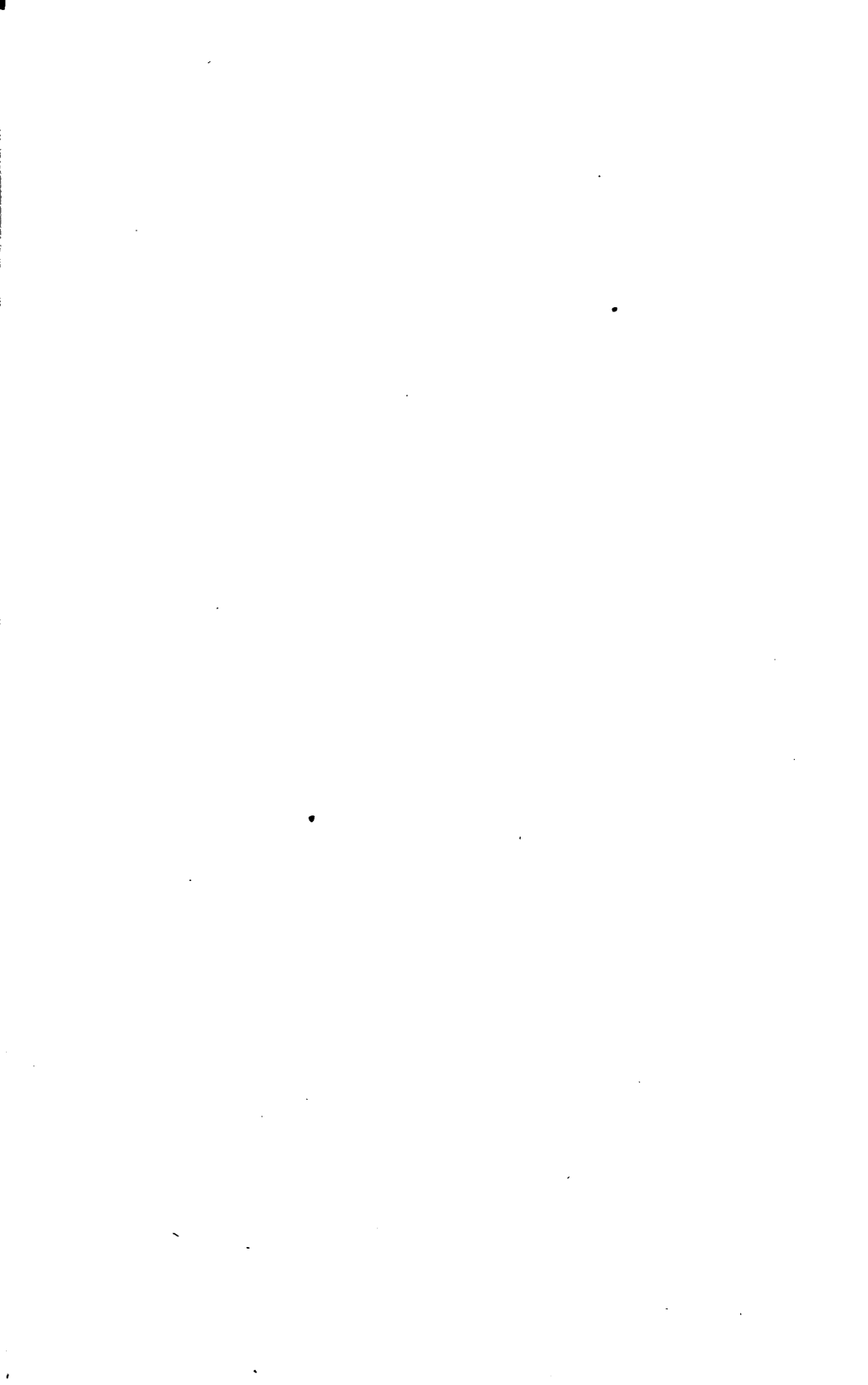
Google's mission is to organize the world's information and to make it universally accessible and useful. Google Book Search helps readers discover the world's books while helping authors and publishers reach new audiences. You can search through the full text of this book on the web at <http://books.google.com/>

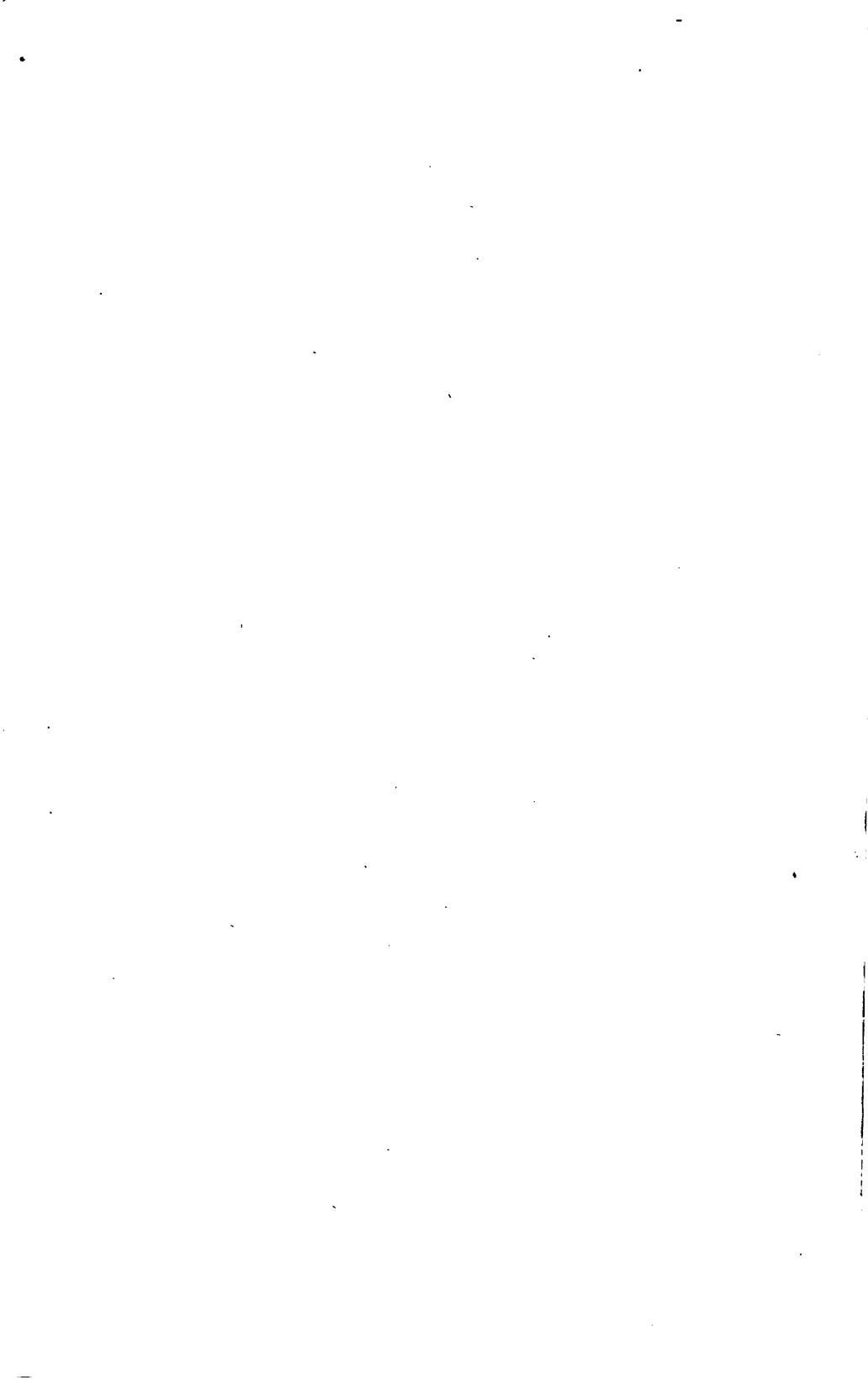
~~279~~ 1.
1896



C. Per.







The Scottish Text Society.

1.

THE KINGIS QUAIR

THE KINGIS QUAIR:

TOGETHER WITH

A BALLAD OF GOOD COUNSEL:

BY

KING JAMES I. OF SCOTLAND.

EDITED BY THE

REV. WALTER W. SKEAT, M.A.

ELRINGTON AND BOSWORTH PROFESSOR OF ANGLO-SAXON,
AND FELLOW OF CHRIST'S COLLEGE, CAMBRIDGE.

Published for the Society by

WILLIAM BLACKWOOD AND SONS

EDINBURGH AND LONDON

MDCCCLXXXIV



CONTENTS.

	PAGE
INTRODUCTION,	vii
THE KINGIS QUAIR,	3
GOOD COUNSEL,	51
NOTES TO THE KINGIS QUAIR,	57
NOTES TO THE BALLAD OF GOOD COUNSEL,	94
GLOSSARIAL INDEX,	97
REMARKS UPON JAMIESON'S DICTIONARY,	113



INTRODUCTION.

§ 1. IT is not my intention to say much here concerning the royal author of the *Kingis Quair*, as accounts of him are easily accessible. In particular, I would refer the reader to the excellent sketch of the life of James I. in chap. vi. of *The History of Scottish Poetry* by David Irving; and to the account in *Morley's English Writers*, vol. ii. part I, p. 445, which is partly taken from *Burton's History of Scotland*. See also the *Life of James I.* in the editions of the *Kingis Quair* by Tytler and Chalmers, and *The Life and Death of King James of Scotland*, edited for the Maitland Club by Mr Stevenson in 1857.

§ 2. The facts of his life that immediately concern the reader of his chief poem may be briefly enumerated. He was born in July 1394, being the second son of King Robert III. and his queen Annabella Drummond.¹ The readers of Sir Walter Scott's '*Fair Maid of Perth*' will remember the sad story of the cruel death of James's elder brother, the Duke of Rothesay, a circumstance which determined the king to send his remaining son to France, ostensibly for education, but really with a view to his safety. Accordingly, in the month of March 1405, Sir David Fleming, the king's kinsman, conducted the young prince

¹ *Life* by Chalmers, in '*Poetic Remains of the Scottish Kings*,' p. 1.

to the Bass Rock, in the Firth of Forth, there to await the ship from Leith which was to carry him to France. As Sir David Fleming was returning to Edinburgh after taking leave of the prince, he was waylaid and slain. Shortly afterwards, the ship arrived, and the prince went on board with his tutor and companions. The ship was attacked by an English vessel off Flamborough Head in a time of truce, and, in defiance of all right and justice, James was taken prisoner, carried to Henry IV. at Windsor, and detained in England for many years. It is singular that the various accounts do not seem to be accurate in every particular. Thus Professor Morley speaks of the prince as being "a boy of fourteen," when it is quite certain that his age, in March 1405, was ten years and about eight months. Again, the date usually assigned for the prince's capture is the 12th of April 1405, being Palm Sunday; but in *The Annals of England*, 1876, p. 221, the date assigned is the 30th of March. There is even a doubt as to whether the ship was attacked in the open sea, or upon its venturing to approach the shore. These are questions of some interest, because James himself has something to say regarding them. In st. 22, he tells us he had passed "the state of innocence," *i.e.* seven years,¹ by the number of three years, so that he was over ten years old. As to the date of his embarkation, he is also explicit. In st. 21 and 22, he tells us that he "took his adventure to pass by sea out of his country, when the sun was beginning his course in Aries, and when it was four degrees past midday." He probably here refers to his first brief experience of the sea in passing by boat from North Berwick to the Bass Rock; a circumstance which impressed his mind so vividly that he

¹ See the note to st. 23.

was able to remember, years afterwards, that he entered the boat at one o'clock on the 12th of March, being the day when the sun entered the sign of Aries.¹ In st. 23, he tells us that, when the ship was purveyed with all necessities, and the wind was favourable, he and his companions entered the ship *early in the morning*, and after many farewells and expressions of good wishes for their safe journey from those whom they left behind, they pulled up sail and went forth upon their way. In st. 24, he expressly says that his ship was attacked *at sea*, and soon overpowered, so that he was taken prisoner by the strong hand, or to speak it briefly, by force.

§ 3. It is certain that James derived many advantages from his long captivity, and his tutor was allowed to take much pains with his education, notwithstanding that he was kept in strict confinement, at first in the Tower of London, next at Nottingham, again in the Tower, and finally in the Castle of Windsor.² All that James tells us about this time is in st. 25, where he remarks that his captivity lasted for nearly eighteen years, when he at last received comfort by the first sight of the beautiful lady whom he afterwards made his queen. He first saw her, just as Palamon and Arcite first saw Emelye, as he was looking out from a window in the castle into the castle-garden below; and his description of her, and of his own feelings towards her, is given in a well-known passage (st. 40 to 50), which has been frequently admired. The lady was Johanne (or Joan) Beaufort, daughter of the Earl of Somerset and Margaret Holand; and it is even probable that there is a punning

¹ See Chaucer's treatise on the Astrolabe, ed. Skeat, part 2, sect. 1.

² See the account by Irving, and the extracts from Rymer's *Fœdera* (tom. 8, p. 484, tom. 9, p. 2, tom. 9, p. 44) in Tytler's edition, p. 70.

allusion to her name in st. 47, where the poet mentions the "floure-jonettis." This fortunate attachment was at once encouraged, in the hope of gaining over the Scottish prince to English interests, and was soon reciprocated by the object of his affections, as we clearly learn from stanza 187, and he was at once allowed a much larger degree of liberty, as he acknowledges in st. 181. Accordingly, early in the following year, on the 2d of February 1424, the young lovers were married in the Church of St Mary Overy, and kept their wedding-feast in the Bishop of Winchester's palace, which was near at hand.¹ Arrangements for his return to Scotland, upon payment of a ransom, were soon made, so that he returned to his native land in April of the same year, and was crowned King of Scotland at Scone on the 21st of May.

§ 4. The story of the remainder of his life belongs to Scottish history, though there is one more point of supreme interest for all readers, namely, the dreadful narrative of his barbarous assassination at Perth, on the 20th of February 1437. "He was at the close of the day" (says Professor Morley) "loosely robed, chatting before the fire of the reception-room of the queen and her ladies. Three hundred Highlanders, with Graham at their head, broke that night into the monastery [of the Black Friars]. Bolts and locks had been tampered with. It was then that Catharine Douglas, finding that the great bolt of the chamber-door had been removed, thrust her arm through the staples, and suffered it to be crushed while time was gained for the king's escape into a sewer-vault below. The flooring was replaced, and the Highlanders, not finding the king, would

¹ Chron. of London from 1089 to 1483, London, 1827, p. 112; Stow's Annales, London, 1615, p. 364; Fabyan's Chronicle, ed. 1811, p. 593.

have retired, but one who suspected the way of escape caused the floor to be searched. James I. was discovered, and was killed by sixteen wounds in the breast alone. Although unarmed, he defended himself well, leaving the mark of his grip on those of his murderers with whom he grappled. His wife, who sought to shelter him, was wounded in the struggle." Such was the sad ending of a love so happily begun.

§ 5. I have already said that the poem of the Kingis Quair, that is, of the King's Book, was composed in 1423. I do not find that it has been observed that we can date it much more exactly than this. A careful study of the poem has led me to believe that it was probably not composed quite all at once; indeed, a poem of 1379 lines must have occupied several days at least, and even at the rate of fifty lines a-day, would have taken up nearly a month. We find, accordingly, that the earlier part of the poem dwells upon the king's state of despondency in the days preceding the month of May, in which he first saw the lady Joan, whilst the closing stanzas refer to a later period. Perhaps we may date its commencement as early as April or March, and its completion, probably, not earlier than June. We also gain some insight into the manner of its composition. It would seem probable that the poem was originally begun as an amusement only, with the avowed hope of beguiling his captivity; he lay awake in bed, thinking *of this and that* (not, at this date, of his lady), and, finding sleep impossible, began to read the treatise of Boethius *De Consolatione Philosophiæ*; he became interested in it (st. 5), and, after shutting it up, continued to think of the variations of Fortune (st. 8). St. 11 follows naturally upon st. 9, and I am inclined to think that st. 10, in which he speaks

of Fortune being "afterwards his *friend*," was interpolated somewhat later. He had, at this time, no very clear idea as to what he was going to write about; he had, indeed, wasted much ink and paper to little effect (st. 13); but, being now ambitious to write "some new thing," and knowing that the best thing to do is to make a good beginning, he made a cross, and so began his book (st. 13). He still bewails his fate, and compares himself to a rudderless ship, since he has no object in life; nothing whereby to guide his voyage (st. 15); so that the poem probably made at first but little progress. St. 19, in which he mentions his torment and his *joy*, may have been slightly altered afterwards; for he seems to have begun his poem by determining to tell the story of his life and lamenting his fate, which continues till st. 28. But in st. 29 there is a great change; he had been bewailing his long days and nights for some time, and I suppose that st. 1 to 28 represent some of his reflections during this period. All at once a new note is struck, one of hope; he now no longer drifts about, but sets to his self-imposed task in good earnest, having found something definite to say; and it is not without some significance that the favourite extract from the poem begins with the thirtieth stanza.

§ 6. I do not find that any one has noticed a curious expression in st. 191. The lines to which I allude are the third and fourth of that stanza :—

"Thankit mot be the sanctis marciall,
That me first causit hath this accident."

For *marciall*, the editions by Tytler and others have *merc-iall*, and there is no note upon the line; nor does the word appear in Thomson's glossary, so that this interesting point has been missed. The "Martial saints" are the saints of

the month of Mars, *i.e.* of March ; and the poet blesses all the saints of this happy month, because it "first caused him this accident," *i.e.* was the *original cause* of his good fortune. I take this to refer, not to his first sight of his lady (which certainly took place in *May*, as we learn expressly from st. 34, 49, and 65), but to the month in which he first quitted his native land ; and I think it highly probable that the recurrence of the 12th of March—the anniversary of the day when he first left home, and all his troubles began (see st. 20)—caused him to turn his thoughts upon the events of his past life. Moreover, it was this retrospect which at last guided him to his new happiness ; for it was when he was tired of thinking that he went to the window to seek for rest, or a fresh inspiration (st. 30), and so beheld the garden and the lady. It is further clear that the composition of the poem must have lasted into June, since, after seeing the lady Joan in May, he speaks of his hopes increasing "day by day" (st. 181), of his "long pain and true service in love" (st. 188), which led to his love being reciprocated,—of his "long and true continuance in love and true service" (st. 192), and of his further success in love "day by day" (st. 193). Indeed, if we are to take the words in the *literal* sense, we should have to allow even a still later date for the latter portion of the poem ; but perhaps a month or six weeks may fairly be considered a long term of service to a lover who is anxious for the success of his suit. I think it will also appear, upon examination, that the poem may have been intended, at one time, to end with st. 173, which is a sort of Envoy following upon st. 172, where he represents himself as awaking from his dream. I conclude that the poem, or at any rate the first draft of it, was

begun at a time, when the poet had little to speak of beyond his past misadventures,—though it is very possible that it was afterwards partially rewritten, owing to the fresh impulse which was given to his fancy on a certain May morning, and that it can hardly have been completed till June.

§ 7. I believe that this hypothesis is also required by the fragmentary nature of the poem ; for, notwithstanding that some art has been shown in giving a certain connectedness to the whole by (as I suppose) the subsequent introduction of occasional connecting phrases, some want of order still remains. The account of Fortune, in st. 158 to 172 with the addition of st. 173, is in a tone in harmony with st. 1 to 28, and might very well have been introduced at an earlier place ; whilst st. 152 to 157 have absolutely nothing to do with the subject, and have very much the appearance of having formerly belonged to one of the poet's earlier compositions, over which he spent, as he tells us, so much paper and ink to so little effect. The following very brief abstract of the poem will assist the reader to form a judgment on this matter.

§ 8. The poet is lying awake at midnight, and being unable to sleep, reads a portion of the treatise of Boethius (1-7). Shutting the book, he meditates on reverses of fortune, till he hears the bell ring for matins (8-11). He at once determines to write a new poem, and begins it with an account of his state of doubt, misery, and uncertainty (12-18). After invoking the muses, he begins the account of the chief events of his youth, his departure from home, his capture at sea, and his imprisonment in England (19-28). To divert his thoughts, he walks to the window. This is the turning-point of his life, for he hears in the garden below the cheery songs of the nightingale, and presently

sees the lady Joan, who inspires him with love at first sight, and whose person and dress he describes (29-50). He addresses a stanza of praise to Venus, and implores the nightingale to sing yet more sweetly (51-62). He next addresses, in imagination, his lady, and the birds break out into a happy chorus ; but at this moment the lady departs, and his day is turned into night (63-67). He mourns her departure till even, when he falls asleep and dreams (68-73). In his dream he sees a great light ; he is carried up in the air to the palace of Venus, where he sees a large chamber filled with lovers of all ages and conditions (74-93).! He also sees Cupid and the goddess Venus herself, whom he salutes, praying her to grant him a second sight of his lady (94-104). She promises her help, but tells him that the success of his suit is uncertain, and that he must also seek the help of Minerva (105-112). She sends Good Hope to guide him to that goddess, at the same time lamenting that mortals have lately become very slack in their service to herself (113-123). Guided by Good Hope, he reaches the palace of Minerva, who tells him that his love will be in vain, unless it is firmly founded upon virtue ; he must be true and patient, and must confess to her the nature of his love (124-138). He declares the truth of his passion, whereupon she promises her help, not without some remarks on the difficult questions of predestination and free-will (139-150). She then dismisses him, and he suddenly returns to earth (151). He now sees a plain, a river full of fishes, and a long row of trees ; also an assemblage of numerous wild and tame animals (152-157). He quits the plain, searching for the goddess Fortune, when suddenly his former guide, Good Hope, appears and shows him a round space walled in, within which is Fortune, dressed in a long ermine mantle ; before her is a wheel, ever revolving, upon which men are

constantly clambering, some of whom frequently fall off into a pit below (158-165). Fortune calls him by name, leads him to her wheel, and bids him climb upon it like the rest (166-171). She then bids him farewell; he awakes, and addresses his own spirit in a stanza imitated from Chaucer (172, 173). The poem is here rather inartistically continued by his reflections upon the meaning of the dream, and by the sudden appearance of a white turtle-dove, who brings a branch, on which is written a message of encouragement (174-179). Thus encouraged, he urges his suit, and is successful, concluding the poem with a prayer to Venus, thanks to all the gods, to Fortune, to the nightingale, to the window in the castle-wall, and to all the saints of March, as having contributed to his good fortune (180-193). Then follows the Envoy, with an address to the poems of Chaucer and Gower (194-197).

§ 9. Perhaps this is the most convenient place for explaining the method of reference employed in the present edition. The poem is written continuously in the MS., and I have accordingly numbered the stanzas throughout continuously, from 1 to 197. It pleased Tytler, who first edited the poem in 1783, to divide it into six imaginary cantos; and his method of division has been followed by nearly all his successors (who, for the most part, only knew the text from his book). This explains why the references in Jamieson's Dictionary are to cantos and stanzas. To understand Tytler's numbering, all that is necessary is to note where his cantos begin. His canto ii. begins with st. 20; canto iii., with st. 74; canto iv., with st. 124; canto v., with st. 152; and canto vi., with st. 173. Hence we must add 19 to the number of his stanza throughout canto ii.; and so on throughout, as in the following table:—

Throughout canto ii., add the number	19
" " iii., " "	73
" " iv., " "	123
" " v., " "	151
" " vi., " "	172

For example : Jamieson quotes the word *amorettis* as occurring in c. ii. st. 28 ; it therefore occurs in st. 47. Conversely, by *subtracting* 19, we find that st. 47 is called by Tytler c. ii. st. 28.

§ 10. I pass on to consider what we know of other poems by the same author. I have printed, at p. 51, a Ballad of which the authenticity is unquestionable. It is ascribed to James I. in an early printed edition, and the internal evidence points the same way ; see the Notes upon the Ballad at p. 94. With this exception, I contend that we have no other poem extant which can be attributed to him with any show of reason, and I entirely decline to follow the critics who ascribe to him the ' Song on Absence,' or ' Peebles to the Play,' or ' Christ's Kirk on the Green.' Of these three, the first is the only one that, in my opinion, can even possibly be his, if the internal evidence is at all to be regarded. It is a song in 13 stanzas, the first of which is as follows, according to the version in Pinkerton's *Ancient Scottish Poems*, 1786, ii. 214 :—

" Sen that [the] eyne, that workis my weilfair
 Dois no moir on me glance,
 A thousand sichis, with suelting sobbis sair,
 Dois throw my bowels lance.
 I die yairning ;
 I leif pyning ;
 Woe dois encres ;
 I wex witles ;
 O sinderin, O woful doleance ! "

But Pinkerton proposes to alter the first line in order to force it into agreement with the supposed evidence. He himself admits that, in the Maitland MS. in the Pepysian Library, which is the original which he professes to follow, it really stands thus—

“ Sen that eyne that workis my weilfair.”

But he assumes that the line is “mutilated,” for the following reason. In Mair’s History of Scotland, we find the following remarks, as quoted by Irving, *Lives of the Scottish Poets*, p. 144. They refer to King James I. “In vernacula lingua artificiosissimus compositor : cujus codices plurimi et cantilenæ memoriter adhuc apud Scotos inter primos habentur. Artificiosum libellum de reginâ dum captivus erat composuit, antequam eam in conjugem duceret ; et aliam artificiosam cantilenam ejusdem, *Yas sen*, etc. et jucundum artificiosumque illum cantum *At Beltayn*, etc. quem alii de Dalketh et Gargeil mutare studuerunt : quia in arce aut camera clausus servabatur in qua mulier cum matre habitabat.”—Major, *De Gestis Scotorum*, fol. cxxxv a., Paris, 1521, 4to. All admit that the *artificiosus libellus de regina* is certainly the Kingis Quair ; the next endeavour of the critics was to find the song beginning with *Yas sen*, or the poem beginning with *At Beltayn*. Now it should have been observed at the outset that Mair (or his printer) seems to have made a mistake ; for the words *Yas sen* give no sense, and there is indeed no such word as *Yas*. Pinkerton was probably thinking of *yes*, but this in Scottish would be spelt *Zis*, as in Barbour, or *Zus* ; and, since the symbol *z* was denoted in print by *x*, it would have appeared as *Zis*. Hence Mair’s evidence is not of much help, and certainly Pinkerton was not justified in

supposing that he had found the song intended because he found one beginning with the word *Sen*. In fact, it is not a little remarkable that the Ballad, which we know to be genuine, also begins with the same word! Hence there is absolutely *no* evidence in favour of attributing to King James this Song on Absence. It is a pleasing poem, and not foreign to the style of the Kingis Quair; the *language* is, perhaps, sufficiently archaic, but I am by no means sure that the same can be said of the *metre*. On the whole, I could find nothing to justify its insertion in the present volume.

§ 11. It remained for the critics to find the poem beginning with the words *At Beltayn*. This they discovered in the poem known as Peebles to the Play, which actually begins with those words. The first stanza is thus printed in Sibbald's Chronicle of Scottish Poetry, vol. i. p. 121, the original being contained in the Maitland MS. already mentioned:—

“At Beltane, quhen ilk bodie bownis
 To Peblis to the Play,
 To heir the singin and the soundis,¹
 The solace, suth to say;
 Be firth and forrest furth they found,
 Thay graythit tham full gay;
 God wait that wald they do that stound,
 For it was their feist day,
 Thai said,
 Of Peblis to the play.”

Now the testimony of Mair tells almost as much *against* the authenticity of this poem as in its favour. James's poem, he says, was not to be got at, but was kept somewhere in safe custody; on which account others of “Dalketh and

¹ Read *sounis*, the correct form.

Gargeil" endeavoured to write substitutes for it, and of course would begin with the two words by which it seems to have been known. This is what I understand by Mair's remark, taking *cantus* as the implied nominative case to *servabatur*, in opposition to Sibbald's remark that "the occasion or subject of the parodies was *by reason of his having been shut up in a tower or chamber in which a woman resided with her mother.*" However this may be, we find that there was more than one *imitation* of James's poem, so that Peebles to the Play, as now known to us, is more likely to have been one of these imitations than the original. If, for example, there were but two imitations, the chances of its being one of these, as against its being the original, are obviously as two to one. The moment we come to examine the poem itself, the notion of attributing it to James I. seems to me entirely out of the question; I cannot even admit that it is an imitation made during his reign, and it must be remembered that Mair did not write till the sixteenth century, and says nothing about the *date* of these imitations. In fact, his testimony is almost worthless at best, the only surprising point being that he is right as to the Kingis Quair itself. For it is very remarkable that Dunbar, in his Lament for the Death of the Makars, *i.e.* of the Poets, does not even mention James I. by name, though he enumerates the names of no less than twenty-three Scottish poets, and includes among them such names as Wyntoun, Holland, Barbour, and Blind Harry. The question of the authorship of Peebles to the Play has been discussed almost *ad nauseam*; but the internal evidence ought to decide the matter. There is no resemblance to the Kingis Quair discoverable; whereas there is a marked dissimilarity in the tone, in the vocabulary, and in the

metre. It will be found by no means easy to point out any undoubted example of the use of the rollicking metre of this poem anterior to the year 1450; whereas James I. died in 1437. The burden of proof lies upon those who think they can meet all the objections arising from the obvious lateness of its style and metre.¹

§ 12. But the critics have not been contented to stop here. It so happens that another poem, entitled Christ's Kirk on the Green (printed together with Tytler's edition of the Kingis Quair, and in Sibbald's Chron. of Scot. Poetry, ii. 359), is ascribed to James the First in the Bannatyne MS. by a probable blunder for James the Fift (Fifth), to whom it has also been assigned, viz. by Bp. Gibson in 1691, by James Watson in 1706, and by others. It is necessary to quote (from Sibbald) the first stanza:—

“Was nevir in Scotland hard nor sene
 Sic dansing nor deray,
 Nowthir at Falkland on the grene,
Nor Pebillis at the play,
 As wes of wowaris, as I wene,
 At Chryst-kirk on ane day.
 There come our Kitteis weschin clene,
 In new kirtillis of gray,
 Full gay,
 At Chrystis kirk on the grene.”

The reader will at once observe the mention, in the fourth line, of Peebles to the Play, as if that poem was still fresh in the recollection of every reader of Christ's Kirk. He should also observe the exact correspondence in metre (and, it might be added, in tone) with that poem. The natural conclusion is that they are of the same age. But we can go further, and discover to what

¹ In st. 19, we find *stokks* rimed with *ax*. But with James I., the plural of *stok* was *stokkis*.

age Christ's Kirk belongs ; for Sibbald has pointed out the very close verbal resemblance between Christ's Kirk and a poem called the Justing of Barbour and Watson, by Sir David Lyndsay. The latter poem, printed among Lyndsay's *Minor Poems*,¹ ed. J. A. H. Murray, E.E.T.S., p. 585, begins in a very similar strain :—

“ In Sanctandrois on Witsoun Monnunday
Was neuer sene sic lusting in no landis.”

And below we have the lines :—

“ Quod Iohne, howbeit thou thinkis my leggis lyke rokkis
ȝit, thocht thy braunis be lyk twa barrow-trammis,
Defend the, man ! Than ran thay to, lyk rammis.”

These lines are to be compared with the following lines in Christ's Kirk :—

“ His lymmis wer lyk twa rokkis
Ran apoun uder lyk rammis
Bet on with barrow-trammis.”

The obvious conclusion is that Christ's Kirk belongs to the reign of James V., though I doubt if it was composed by him. And, in claiming this poem for James I., certain critics have claimed too much. It may be granted that Peebles to the Play and Christ's Kirk are in the same peculiar metre and nearly of the same date, but the safest result is to assign Peebles to the Play to the sixteenth century. In accordance with this, it may be mentioned that the earliest mention of Christ's Kirk is that by Bannatyne, in 1568 ; and the earliest *certain* mention of Peebles to the Play is in the poem of Christ's Kirk, as above. If we are to have any regard at all to the language, style, and metre of these poems, we cannot make them earlier

¹ An early edition was printed at Edinburgh in 1568.

than half a century or more after 1437. The case is precisely parallel to the assignment to Chaucer of the poem called the Court of Love, which no philologist can admit to be earlier than the close of the fifteenth century. It is needless to pursue the subject further; for no arguments will ever convince those who have adopted a notion of the antiquity of these poems, whilst those who perceive their lateness require no further argument.¹

§ 13. The consideration of the style of these poems naturally leads us to consider the language of the Kingis Quair, especially with regard to its grammatical forms. This is a point which has hitherto received no attention, whereas it evidently lies at the root of the whole matter. All that we have been told hitherto is that he was a close imitator of Chaucer, and the most explicit utterance upon this subject is contained in the following passage, which I cite from Mr T. H. Ward's remarks upon King James in his excellent edition of the English Poets, vol. i. p. 130: "His nineteen years of captivity allowed him to steep himself in Chaucer's poetry, and any Chaucerian student who reads The King's Quair is constantly arrested by a line or a stanza or a whole episode that exactly recalls the master. It is unnecessary to point out, for instance, the close resemblance of the passage which we here quote, the king's first sight of Lady Jane, to the passage in The Knightes Tale, where Palamon and Arcite first see Emilye. Not only the general idea but the details are copied; for example, the king, like Palamon, doubts whether the beautiful vision be woman or goddess. The ascent to the Empire of Venus is like an

¹ "One can hardly suppose those critics serious, who attribute this song [of Christ's Kirk] to the moral and sententious James the First."—Guest, Eng. Rhythms, ed. 1882, p. 624.

abridgment of *The Hous of Fame*. Minerva's discussion of Free Will is imitated from Chaucer's rendering of the same theme, after Boethius, in *Troylus and Creseyde*. The catalogue of beasts near the dwelling of Fortune, is an echo of Chaucer's catalogue of birds in *The Parlement of Foules*. Isolated instances of imitation abound ; thus :—

‘Til Phebus endit had his bemēs brycht,
And bad go farewele every leef and floure,
That is to say, approchen gan the nyght,’

is a repetition of a well-known passage in *The Frankeleynes Tale* :—

‘For the orizont had reft the sonne his lyght,
(This is as much to seyn as it was nyght).’

A passage in *Troylus* is recalled by—

‘O besy gost, ay flikering to and fro;’

and another by the king's concluding address to his book—
‘Go, litel tretis.’”

§ 14. It will be seen that Mr Ward here points out about eight examples of resemblance between the language of James and of Chaucer, which were quite sufficient for his purpose. But I have thought it desirable to make a much stricter search, for the results of which I must refer the reader to the Notes. I find clear allusions to, or phrases copied from, the following poems by Chaucer: *Troilus and Cressida*, the metre of which is imitated, which furnishes more than a dozen instances; *The Knightes Tale*, with at least as many; *The Clerkes Tale*, with two instances; other of the *Canterbury Tales*; the *Book of the Duchess*; *Annelida and Arcite*; the *Assembly of Foules*; the *Complaint of Mars*; *Lenvoy a Skogan*; the *Legend of Good Women*; and probably (as Mr Ward says) the *House*

of Fame. To take a few examples that have not hitherto been noticed, we may observe how close is the resemblance in the following instances :—

- "Streight vnto schip, no longere wold we tarye."—K. Q. 23.
- "And forth he goth, no longer wolde he tarye."—C. T. 12,785.
- "Paciently thou tak thyne auenture."—K. Q. 106.
- "And patiently takth your auenture."—Compl. of Mars, 21.
- "All thing has time, thus sais Ecclesiaste."—K. Q. 133.
- "For alle thing hath time, as sayn thise clerkes."—C. T. 9846.
- "Has maist in mynde : I can say 3ou no more."—K. Q. 182.
- "And liuen in wele ; I can seye you no more."—C. T. 4595.
- "Quho couth it red, agone syne mony a 3ere."—K. Q. 196.
- "Is writen, god wot, who so coude it rede."—C. T. 4615.
- "But soth is said, gon sithen are many yeres."—C. T. 1523.

It is needless to cite more examples ; but I may add that, over and above the allusions to Chaucer, we find that the poet refers to the Latin treatise of Boethius and to *Le Roman de la Rose*.

§ 15. But it is not sufficient to consider these direct imitations of Chaucer ; we must go a step further, and enquire strictly into the *grammar* which our author employs. We are at once met by the startling fact, that he abandons the grammar used in the Lowlands of Scotland, and attempts to imitate all the inflections of the Midland dialect of Chaucer, evidently considering him as furnishing the true model of literary form. Hence his poem is by no means, as has been supposed, an example of Northern English ; it exhibits a purely *artificial* dialect, such as probably was never spoken. We have a precisely parallel example in the poem of *Lancelot of the Laik*, edited by me for the Early English Text Society in 1865, the author of which affects Southern forms to such an extent as to produce a curious jumble such as was never employed in actual speech.

Nothing could show more clearly the predominating influence, at this period, of Chaucer's genius. The result, by the way, is the more remarkable, because James was perfectly acquainted with the Lowland dialect. This is ascertained by the preservation of a most interesting document, entirely in the king's own handwriting, written at Croydon in 1412. It runs as follows :¹—

“Jamis throu the grace of god . Kynge of Scottis. Til all that this lettre heris or seis sendis gretynge. Wit ȝe that we haue grauntit & be this *presentis lettres* grauntis . a speciall confirmaciun in the mast forme til oure traiste and wele belofit Cosyng *sir* William of Douglas of drumlangrig of all the landis that he is possessit . and charterit of within the kyngdome of Scotlande that is for to say the landis of drumlangrig of Hawyke & of Selkirke the whilkis charts & possiouns¹. be this *lettre* we conferme . and wil for the mare sekernes this our confirmacioun . be formabilli *after* the fourme of oure chaunssellare and the tenor of his chartris selit with oure grete sele in tyme to come in witnes of the whilkis this *presentis lettres* we wrate with oure propre hande vnder the signet vsit . in selyng of oure *lettres* as now at Croidoune the last dai of Nouember the *gere* of oure lorde . i^{mo} cccc^o xij^o.”

§ 16. In this document we have but little mixture of dialect. The verbs show the Northern suffix *-is*, both in the singular and in the plural, except that *conferme* should rather have been *confermis*; and the weak past participles show the Northern suffix *-it*. When we turn to the poem,

¹ A facsimile is given by Chalmers, and is the only thing of value in his worthless book, of which more below. Chalmers misprints *Till*, *al*, *daie*, for *Til*, *all*, and *dai*.

² *Sic*; for *possessiouns*. The facsimile is not quite accurate; it has *fouome* for *fourme*, and a few other dubious letters.

all this is changed; and it is evident, from the exigencies of the metre, that the numerous Midland (or rather Southern) inflections are due rather to the author than to the scribe. As this can only be shown by a tolerably strict analysis of the poem, I proceed to show this formally. The rules for the scansion of Chaucer, in accordance with the grammatical forms employed by him, are given in the Introduction to my edition of Chaucer's *Prioresses Tale*, 3d edition, 1880, pp. liv-lxxiv. I select some of the more important rules, and give examples of them from our poem.¹

(a) The infinitive mood in Chaucer ends in *-e* or *-en*, constituting a syllable, though *-e* is elided before a following vowel. The Northern infinitive and gerund admit of *no* suffix, so that *to smert* (8)² is correct and natural to the author. But he has several examples of the artificial suffix *-e* or *-en*; as in *wirken* (68), *seken* (99), *trusten* (137), *helpen* (144), *supporten* (194). In these instances the scribe has correctly preserved the suffix, and we are hence enabled to correct the instances wherein he has not done so, thus restoring the correct scansion. Accordingly we must read *approchen* (72), *fallen* (148), *clymben* (164, 169), *reulen* (194). Similarly, the suffix *-e* appears in *change* (83), *deserue* (143); and must be restored in *lette* (113). We find the suffix *-en* in the present tense plural of the verb, as in *menen* (137); similarly we should read *gruchen* (91). The Northern forms would be *menis*, *gruchis*, but we may suspect that the scribe is right here. A crucial instance occurs in st. 24, where *weren* is dissyllabic, as in Chaucer; for the Northern form is *war*, as

¹ When the final *-e* forms a distinct syllable, I have denoted this in the text by the use of a mark of diæresis, as in *estatt* in st. 3. In some doubtful cases of final *-en* I have also marked the syllable, as in *eyen* in st. 41. So also *steriles* in st. 15 has three syllables.

² The number within a parenthesis is the number of the stanza.

in Barbour's Bruce, which should be consulted for information as to Northern grammar.

(b) A peculiarity of Chaucer is, that many words which are monosyllabic in Northern English are dissyllabic in Midland. An excellent example occurs in the word *heart*—Northern *hert*, Midland *herte*.¹ The king uses the Chaucerian form, though the scribe does not write it; in four instances it is written *hert*, where the metre requires *herte* (48, 128, 170, 177). In the last instance *kálendis* is almost dissyllabic, the final *-is* being slurred over before the following vowel. That the form *herte* was unnatural to the writer, appears from the use of *hertly*, not *hertely*, in st. 144. In st. 9 the scribe writes *estate*, where *estat* is meant, the word being dissyllabic; but the artificial trisyllabic form, *estate*, occurs in st. 3. Other artificial forms occur in the dissyllables *prynce* (9), *eye* (51), *wise*, *charge* (120), *gyde* (126), *lufe* (134), *chance* (146), *sonne* (153), *quhele* (162).

(c) Chaucer sometimes uses a final *-e* to denote the vocative case; the king imitates this in the word *suede* (57). This is not Northern.

(d) Chaucer uses a final *-e* to mark the plural of the adjective. Of this James has numerous instances, as in *grene* (33), *faire* (76), *fresche* (80), *huge* (100), *bothe* (124), *fresche* (152), *grene* (191). Hence we can confidently restore the metre in other instances by reading *zonge* (86, 92), *longe* (29, 95). So also, in the phrase *grete balas*, the form *balas* has a plural sense (46): *Foure* is dissyllabic, as in st. 21. These usages are not Northern.

(e) Chaucer uses a final *-e* to denote the *definite* form of the adjective, this use being determined by the occurrence

¹ To be read *hert-e*, in two syllables, the final *e* being sounded as in German. And so throughout, in all other instances.

of *the* or *that* or *this*, or of a possessive pronoun, before the adjective. This is not Northern; yet examples abound. Hence we find *his faire* (7), *the plane* (36), *hir suete* (41), *hir quhyte* (48), *that fresche* (49), *the suete* (61), *the suete grene*, where the adjectives are plural (67), *the hote* (76), *your benigne* (102), *that suete* (103); and see stanzas 109, 130, 133, 143, (*this ilke*) 154, 155. Had the scribe understood this matter, there would have been more examples still; for we can restore the metre in numerous places by reading *the longe* (8), *the sharpe* (32), *the freschest zonge* (40), *thir calde* (69), *the longe* (72), *the colde* (73), *the ryghte* (75), *the nexte* (86), *the blynde* (94), *this faire* (178), *the faire* (191). Positive proof of the truth of this rule is afforded by such an example as that in st. 32, where we find: "The scharpë grenë suetë Ienepere." For here the omission of the final *e* would leave but seven syllables in the line, and would produce a most jarring discord, such as no man with an ear could have endured. The king's ear for melody was doubtless a fine one. So also in st. 33, we find: "And on the smallë grenë twistis sat."

(f) But here comes in a most curious result. Chaucer does *not*, in general, use the final *-e* in adjectives occurring in the singular and indefinitely. This is a refinement of grammar to which James did not attain. It is the fate of writers in an artificial dialect that they make mistakes of this character, just as Spenser has perpetrated some extraordinary offences against grammatical propriety in his *Fairy Queen*. Accordingly, we find the king wrongly adding a final *-e* to indefinite adjectives in several places; he seems to have regarded it as a poetical embellishment, to be added or dropped at pleasure, a theory which had doubtless great practical convenience. A clear instance of this false

usage occurs in st. 65, where we should read, "With new-e fresch-e suete and tender grene"; the *e* in *suete* being elided before the following vowel. Other examples are seen in *large* (77), *strange* (135), *hye* (154), *strange* (163), *lawe* (164), *newe* (165), *gude* (185). To these add *longe* (154), *faire* (178), miswritten *long* and *fair* respectively. I think we should also read *rounde* in st. 159, l. 2, to complete the line, but I omitted to observe it soon enough to suggest it in the text. It may be observed that the final *-e* is, however, permissible in *some* of these words—viz., in the French words *large*, *strange*, and in the word *newe*, which was naturally dissyllabic; but the forms *hye*, *lawe*, *gude*, *longe*, *faire*, as here used, are hardly defensible. They are not only not Northern; they are not even Chaucerian. The worst example of a false concord occurs in the first line of st. 117: "And quhen I wepe, and *stenten* othir quhile." It will be observed that the form *stenten* is absolutely required for the scansion; yet it is a *plural* form, just as if we should use the expression *ego amamus* in writing Latin. Yet it is quite explicable; it is a translation into Chaucerian language of the Northern word *styntis*; for, in the Northern dialect, the phrases *I stintis* and *we stintis* were once equally correct.

(*g*) Chaucer uses a final *e* to denote an adverbial use; this is unknown to the Northern dialect. I do not find many examples. Still we have *newe*, newly (8), *longe*, a long while (164), *faire*, fairly (180). So also the adverbial phrase *at the last* (98) is miswritten for *at the laste*, so commonly written *atte laste* in MSS. of Chaucer.

(*h*) Chaucer makes the adverb *twi-es* (twice) a dissyllable; accordingly, the scansion shows that *twise* in st. 25 is a mistake for *twies*; see the footnote.

(*i*) Chaucer makes the word *ey-en* (eyes) dissyllabic;

hence we find the same twice (8, 104). But in one instance our author is off his guard, using *eyne* (= *eyn*) in st. 35; probably because a vowel follows, and Chaucer sometimes slurs over the syllable *-en* before a vowel.

(*k*) Chaucer frequently has a syllabic *e* in the middle of a word; an example occurs in *ster-e-les* (three syllables) in st. 15. This is hardly Northern; but examples are rather numerous. We have *unkynd-e-nes* (87, 116), *chap-el-let* (97), *benign-e-ly* (104), *pap-e-iaȝ* (110), *diuers-e-ly* (135); so also we should read *hert-e-full* (180); *henn-es-furth* (69, 144, 181). The last word is miswritten in all three places. But occasionally the king forgets his master's rules, using *hertly* for *hert-e-ly* (144), *chaplet* for *chap-el-let* (46).

(*l*) Chaucer uses *-es*, forming a distinct syllable, to denote plurals. Here our author was quite at home, for the Northern dialect used *-is* (forming a distinct syllable) for the same purpose. Examples occur in *sterres* (1), *werdes* (9), *wawis* (16), *flouris* (21), &c.; it is needless to add more examples. The same remark applies to the final *-es* (Northern *-is*), used to mark the genitive case. Examples are *warldis* (3), *goddis* (22), *lyvis* (28), &c.; more need not be given. Hence we clearly see that the scribe should have written *rokkis* in st. 15, just as in st. 18.

(*m*) Chaucer distinguishes between the past tenses and past participles of some weak verbs by using a final *e* in the former, but none in the latter. Thus *bringen*, to bring, makes the past tense *brought-e*, but the pp. *brought*; compare the usage of modern German. My experience tells me that this is the most difficult point in the scansion of Chaucer for a learner to realise, and I find no trace of it in the present poem. The Northern suffix *-it* was used for the past tense and past participle indifferently; hence

we find always *-ed* or *-it* or *-d* or *-t* in such cases. The scribe has miswritten *lak* for *lakit* (16); and the author slurs over the final syllables of *purvait* and *pullit* before following vowels in st. 23.

(n) In st. 34 I suspect the scribe has miswritten the first word, which is an instance of the imperative plural. Chaucer would have written *Worshippeth*; Northern grammar requires *Worshippis*. Either way, the word is trisyllabic, which is my reason for so marking it. In st. 117, *patience* has three syllables; Chaucer assigns it four, as *pac-i-enc-e*.

§ 17. The preceding investigation is of the highest importance to the correction of the text; and the fact that no editor has ever hitherto made such an investigation explains why so little has been done for the text hitherto, and why the MS. copy has received so little attention. The net result is that the lines of James I., like the lines of Chaucer, are *beautifully musical*, and quite different from the halting lines of Lydgate. We now see that we have a right to expect that every line should be perfect, and should scan with exact regularity. Hence we can detect, in many places, the omission by the scribe of words and syllables that are necessary to the scansion; and it at once appears that, in many instances, it is quite as necessary, for the *sense* as for the *metre*, that we should supply one or more words in a line. Words thus supplied are enclosed within square brackets, so that they can easily be considered. Easy and obvious examples occur in st. 3, l. 3; st. 8, l. 7; st. 16, l. 3; st. 20, l. 5; st. 28, l. 3; st. 52, l. 4, &c. The absolute necessity for supplying a final *e* in many places has been shown above, and may at once be understood in such a case as that of *scharpe* in st. 32.

When these corrections have been made, the number of

incomplete lines is very greatly reduced ; the principal ones being as follows :—

St. 1, l. 7. Perhaps we should read *north-e-ward*, in three syllables.

St. 31, l. 6. Perhaps we should read the artificial word *y-walking*.

St. 53, l. 4. For *vnto* read *to*.

St. 74, l. 7. A syllable too much.

St. 82, l. 3. The same remark applies as in st. 31, l. 6 ; but it is not impossible that the cæsure (as it sometimes does) counts for a syllable.

St. 86, l. 6. A syllable too much ; perhaps *sorouful*.

St. 97, l. 5. A syllable too much. Omit *that* ; the omission of the relative is common.

St. 110, l. 4. Read *tabartis* as *tabarts* ; this use of *s* for final *-is* occurs occasionally, when a substantive has *more than one syllable*. So also *kalendis*, st. 177, l. 7.

St. 158, l. 3. Imperfect, either owing to the cæsure, or because *furth* is practically dissyllabic.

St. 159, l. 2. Read *round-e*, dissyllabic.

St. 161, l. 1. *Er-myn* seems to count as having three syllables.

For further information, as to elision, slurring, &c., the reader is referred to my remarks on Chaucer, already noticed above.

§ 18. The Ballad of Good Counsel is written in a pure Northern dialect, without a single example of a Southern form. It has been shown (§ 15) that James could, upon occasion, write the Northern dialect purely, so that this circumstance furnishes no presumption against its authenticity. The *style* is precisely that of the Kingis Quair, and I have no doubt that it should be accepted as being from

the same hand. The earliest MS. is of the end of the *fifteenth* century.

§ 19. I have to add a final remark on the grammar. The Northern writers who imitated Chaucer seem to have got into trouble with the suffix *-ing*, or else the scribes did not understand it. This is shown in my preface to *Lancelot of the Laik* (Early English Text Society). Properly, the suffix *-ing* denoted the present participle, or a substantive derived from a verb; but it was confused with the Midland suffix *-en* of the present indicative plural, and with the common English suffix *-en* of the past participles of strong verbs. Hence, in st. 1, l. 2, *twynklyng* appears to be for *twynklen*, pres. pl. indicative. In st. 45, l. 4, *I-fallyng* stands for *I-fallen*, the pp.; here the prefix *I-* is Southern, and unknown to Northern English. Yet it recurs in *Iblent* (74), *Ilokin* (69), *Iwone* (108), *Ilaid* (120), &c., and was evidently regarded as a poetical embellishment. We even find the infinitive *ybete* (116). In st. 6 we find the Southern *makith* (for *maketh*) instead of the Northern *makis*; but it is useless to discuss such instances, as we are here at the mercy of the scribe.

§ 20. The *rimes* are, I believe, *Northern* rimes throughout, and mostly only single rimes, after the Northern fashion of ignoring the final *-e*. We find words rimed together which Chaucer never admitted; thus in st. 11 Chaucer would have written *sodaynly*, which cannot be rimed with *ly-e*, *fantasy-e*; nor does he rime *forby* with *remedy-e* (30), nor with *aspy-e* (31); nor *louingly* with *maystry-e* (66), &c. The rimes are, from the author's point of view, perfect, with the exception of *corage*, which is not a perfect rime with *charge* and *large* (38). In st. 39, *regne* is for *rine* (Northern *ring*), and is thus a permissible rime with *benigne*. In st. 7, *tong* is

repeated ; so is *mynd* in st. 73, and *fall* as a substantive is rimed with *fall* as a verb in st. 172. In st. 92, the riming of *dryue* with *gyue* is permissible, because *dryue* is the pp., and the *i* is short ; but the more correct form is *driuen*. Instances of true double rimes are very common, as in the case of *deuidith*, *prouidith* (9). For other instances, see st. 6, 7, 14, 21, 23, 28, 47, 65, 68, 69, 79, 85, 90, 99, 105, 111, &c.

§ 21. I have been led into these details because it enables me to explain more clearly the method which I have adopted in editing the poem. My first care was to set aside all previous editions, and to obtain an accurate copy of the MS. itself, which has been far too much neglected. It is an amazing fact that it has taken *a whole century* to set the text right, and nothing can be more extraordinary than the history of the text up to the present time. The previous editions are described more particularly below ; but the net result is that Tytler, who first printed the text in 1783, was provided with a transcript of the unique MS. made by "an ingenious young gentleman, a student of Oxford" ; it does not appear that he ever saw the MS. himself. Sibbald, when reprinting a large portion of the poem, tells us that his "is the first *corrected* copy." His notion of correcting it was to make just a few alterations here and there, according to his own fancy. It does not appear that he ever saw the MS., but some one must have consulted it for him, as he attained to the correct reading of *list* for *lefe* in st. 178. The Glasgow edition of 1825 is a reprint of Tytler. Chalmers, after severely censuring Tytler for his numerous errors, actually sends Tytler's book to press, and copies text,¹ notes, and all ; but he never saw the MS., and scarcely paid the slightest heed to the collation made for him by Mr Ruding,

¹ In a sort of parody ; see below.

which, though not always correct, was better than nothing. The Rev. C. Rogers, in 1873, merely collated the texts of Tytler and Chalmers, which amounted to no more than collating Tytler with Chalmers's parody of the same. The only editor who ever saw the MS. himself, or paid any regard to it, was Mr Ebenezer Thomson of Ayr; but he did not make his collation till after his text had been printed off, and all that he really discovered was the superiority of the MS. to the printed texts. His ignorance of the language of the poem, even after very careful study of it, is frequently surprising, but his remarks are often acute, and he certainly made a most gallant attempt to better the text in the face of great difficulties. In his Introduction to the second edition (1823), p. ix, he has this remarkable utterance: "Whoever, therefore, shall hereafter aspire to the honour of editing the King's Quair, will neither satisfy his own wishes nor the public expectation, unless he brings to the task a mind prepared by habits of strict analysis, by a mature acquaintance with the English writers of the fourteenth century, by considerable experience in decyphering ancient manuscripts, and a thorough (personal) collation of the Seldenian Quair," *i.e.* with the MS. This is just; and this is why I first of all put aside all previous editions, and started afresh with a transcript from the Selden MS., and a subsequent collation of the proof-sheets with the MS. itself, so as to make sure of every letter and every stroke. The result was, as I expected, that the MS. has not had justice done to it; the large number of small inaccuracies in the old editions has caused many needless difficulties, which are now cleared up; and it is at last possible to consult all the notes and comments given in the editions without being misled by them, which is a material point. I will

only add, that the very common practice of reprinting old printed texts, without consulting the MSS. from which those texts were printed, is most reprehensible, as it often ensures the needless perpetuation of the strangest blunders. It is the more unsafe, because many examples are known in which editors had no familiarity either with MSS. or with the grammar of the language which they professed to interpret; but the story of their incompetency is a melancholy one, nor is this the place for discussing it.

§ 22. The unique MS. of the *Kingis Quair* is in the Bodleian Library at Oxford, where it is marked "Arch. Selden, B. 24." It is a MS. on paper, containing numerous poems and treatises, and, in particular, some poems by Chaucer. The *Kingis Quair* begins on leaf 192, and ends on leaf 211. It is not all in one handwriting; the hand changes at st. 178, the latter part of the poem being in a somewhat smaller handwriting. There is also a slight change here in the system of spelling, but it is not sufficient to be worth a detailed discussion. On leaf 120 of the MS. the date 1472 occurs; and the date of the MS. itself is about 1475, or half a century after the date of composition of the poem. I take it to be a somewhat faulty transcript from a fairly good original. Most of the mistakes arise from the occasional omission of words or syllables. In st. 160, l. 4, the scribe had a couple of words before him which he could not read; so he left them out. In st. 47, he repeats the last word of l. 4 at the end of l. 5. The various footnotes point out most of the scribe's errors. It is pleasant to see how some of the old misconceptions are cleared away. I will cite just one example by way of specimen. In st. 24, l. 2, we have: "So infortunate was vs that fremyt day." This means, "That strange (or adverse) day was so unfortunate for us"; and *vs*

is here the dative case, just as *thee* is the dative case in the expression, "O well is *thee*, and happy mayst thou be." But Tytler misprinted *we* for *us*, and was duly followed by Sibbald and E. Thomson. Chalmers, indeed, alters the phrase to *were we*, thus succeeding in getting *two* words wrong instead of *one*! But what are we to think of editors who were contented to leave such a glaring false concord¹ as *we was* without a word of comment?

§ 23. As the unique MS. is thus our only guide, I decided to exhibit it with the closest possible accuracy; and for this purpose I have adopted the method which has been found so satisfactory by the Early English Text Society—viz., that of exhibiting every mark of abbreviation and contraction in the MS. by the use of italic letters.² These italics practically tell us that certain letters are not fully expressed, but only indicated by various signs and marks. The value of the method consists in this, that it is a guarantee to the reader that the editor has done his work carefully. It is even more than this; for the reader who is himself skilled in deciphering MSS. knows at once what form these marks of contraction would take, and is thus put in as good a position as if he had the MS. itself before him. If the editor has made a mistake, he can correct it; and, in fact, I have more than once rightly corrected a misread word in texts thus carefully represented, whereas in a manipulated text the chance of doing this is often taken away. The printing of *v* for *u*, and of *j* for *I*, so extremely common, is a great mistake, and leads to errors which cannot easily be seen through. An objection has been raised, that the use of italic letters offends the eye. The answer to this is, that

¹ It was such in the *old* language.

² A misunderstanding as to the value of my carefully prepared transcript led to much delay.

the eye soon becomes accustomed to it, and the gain in accuracy is worth much ; whilst the attempt to make things pleasant by the alteration of MS. forms to suit modern ideas leads, in practice, to numerous inaccuracies. The editor is then no longer fully responsible, and knows that if he makes a mistake he is not likely to be found out. If it be a fact, as it is, that the word *us* was commonly written *vs*, or again, that *v* between two vowels was written *u*, why are such facts to be carefully suppressed? ¹ If we exhibit the old spelling at all, let us represent it just as it really was.

§ 24. For those who are not experienced in the use of marks of abbreviation by the old scribes, I proceed to explain them fully.

(a) A well-defined upward curl at the end of a word or syllable signifies *er*. Examples occur in *diuerse* (2), *better* (2), *euer* (5), *reouer* (5), &c. This abbreviation is extremely common.

(b) But if this curl occur after *p*, it then means *re*, as in *presence* (miswritten *presene* by a mere slip), in st. 166. This is because there is another symbol for *per*, which is represented by drawing a horizontal stroke through the tail of the *p*, as in *properly* (3).

(c) A curl like an ill-shaped *v*, but much extended horizontally, stands for *vr* or *ur*. It occurs in *purpose* (5), *turnyt* (6), *turment* (19), &c.

(d) A curl, first upward, then crossed, and finally brought downwards, represents *es* or *is* ; in Northern MSS. it may be taken to mean *is*. It occurs in *spekis* (12), *rokkis* (17), *bokis* (19), *schouris* (20), *flouris* (21), &c.

What happens is this : a MS. has a word which may be read as *lene* or as *leue*. The editor reads it as *lene*, but prints it *leue*. If it be wrong, how is the unwary reader to detect the error?

(e) A curl very closely resembling the figure 9 means *us*. It occurs in *Synthius* (20), *thus* (27, 69), *venus* (52, 150), &c.

(f) A small undotted *i* above the line means *ri*. Examples are: *enprise* (20), *prisoun* (25), *princesse* (43), *priuely* (89).

(g) A stroke above a vowel, especially at the end of a word, means *m* or *n*; when over *ou*, it means *n*. Examples of *m* are few, but we find *cummyth* (36), *cummyn* (40), *wommanly* (50), *cummyng* (126), *blame* (195). Examples of *n* are very common, as in *auenture* (10), *man* (11), *myn* (12), *resoun* (7), *prisoun* (25), *orisoun* (53), &c. But it is frequently the case that this stroke is superfluously added when a word already contains *m* or *n*; and then there is no way of representing it except by printing it as written. Hence the forms *for^m* (46), *tha^m* (115), *matyⁿs* (11), *anoⁿ* (40), *douⁿ* (8), *souⁿ* (13). It is also superfluous in *sleuth* (186), *go^uth* (193). Difficult words of this class are *humily* (106, 176), which Tytler and the rest misprint *truely*, to which it bears no resemblance; and *mⁱster*, *i.e.* *minster*, or rather *minⁱster* (43), which Tytler prints as *mester*, though it makes no sense, the proper sense of *mester* being 'a trade.'

(h) A small *t* above the line stands for *ght* or *cht*. As *gh* (not *ch*) is occasionally written in the MS., we must take it to be *ght*. Examples: *noght* (2), *myght* (2), *thoght* (5, 12), &c.

(i) A very difficult and doubtful sign is a very slight curl at the end of a word. It frequently means final *e*, but is sometimes meaningless. Examples are: *eftere* (3), *theire* (6), *matere* (8), *vere* (20). In some cases, the final *e* is essential, as it constitutes an additional syllable. Examples: *faire* (7), *four^e* (21).

(k) Another difficult symbol is a long *s* followed by a

downward crooked stroke ; it closely resembles the German β . This seems best expressed by *se*, as in *wise* (12), *deuise* (12), *case* (16), *aryse* (20), &c. It is sometimes preceded by a second *s*, as in *distresse* (5, 10), *doubilnesse* (18), *processe* (19). The difficulty is, that in some instances it certainly means *sis*, as in *coursis* (108) ; but this usage is mostly confined to plural substantives.

(1) Some words are systematically abbreviated. Thus *y^t* stands for *þ^t*, to be printed as *þat* or *that*, as in stanzas 3, 6, 8, 9, 10, 11, &c. So also *y^e* for *þe* or *the* ; I print it 'the' (187, 197). Also *w^t* for *with* (13, 19, 23, 24, &c.). Also *q^d* for *quod* (139, 142, 169, 172). The symbol & for *and* is very common, but as there is no doubt about it, I print it simply 'and' ; it occurs in st. 23, 33, 35, 71, &c. Other abbreviated words are *thou* (195), *gour* (34, 43, 52, 63), *gou* (34, 73, 141), *throu* (41). The word 'present' is commonly written *pñt*, to be read as *present* (106). Tytler, not understanding this, prints 'pent,' which others follow. The prefix *com* is denoted in MSS. by a symbol closely resembling a 'q' ; hence Tytler actually prints 'qmune' (147, 149), and 'qmonly' (119), and others follow him ! The indefinite article *a* is occasionally joined to the word following it, as in *alyte* (49), written *alyte* (53). The letter *j* is denoted by (capital) I, as in *Iangill* (38), *Ionettis* (47), *pape-lay* (110). But the same symbol often means *i*, as in *Infortune* (5), *Incidence* (7). The letter *g* occurs frequently, and is best represented by a special symbol. In the present poem, it is only used for the sound of *y* initially, but it is not uncommon for *gh* in words such as *li₃t* for *light*, and the like ; and it is because its use is indeterminate that it is best to retain it. It occurs in *gouth* (9), *ge* (11), *geris* (22), and the like ; put for *youth*, *ye*, *yeris*.

(*m*) Other peculiarities, common to nearly all MSS., are the use of capital letters where we do not now write them, as in In (27); and the use of small letters where we now write capitals, as in god (44). The letter *u*, between two vowels, is to be sounded as *v*, as in diuerse (2), pouert (3); whilst initial *v* sometimes stands for *u*, as in vp (9), vs (24).

The parts of compound words are frequently separated; in such cases, I unite them by a hyphen, as in for-walowit (11), written as two words in the MS. Lastly, in order to assist the reader in scanning the lines, I have marked the final or medial *e*, where it constitutes a syllable, with a mark of diæresis, as in the case of thilkē (5), sterēles (15). Words or letters not found in the MS., but supplied by myself, are enclosed within square brackets, as in st. 8, l. 1, st. 16, l. 3. Tytler freely supplies words out of his own head *without any such hint*. Thus he prints the last line of st. 107 after the following fashion:—

“That langis not to me to writh, God allone.”

“Will it be believed” (exclaims Mr E. Thomson) “that the word *God* is not in [the] MS.?” The strangest part of the matter is that the line, when thus manipulated, is the most hopeless nonsense. But readers in general have very little notion how often they have been mystified by editors, especially in the “good old times.” Lastly, it may be remarked that the MS. is, as usual, wholly without marks of punctuation. Every editor punctuates as seems best in his own eyes; and I have restored sense in a great many places by the mere shifting of a comma. The general spelling of the scribe is good, being to a great extent phonetic, though the pronunciation of those days was different from that now in vogue. The scribe’s worst mistake is the very common

one of putting a final *e* at the end of a word where it is perfectly useless and otiose, as in *fruyte* (7), *frende* (10), *oure-hayle* (10), *sodaynlye* (11), *wayke* (14), and the like. And he often omits the same letter, where he should not have done so, as has been said. In many places, the final *e* (in the Northern dialect) merely denotes, as in modern English, that the *preceding* vowel is long; as in *tyme* (5), *sone* (11).

§ 25. The general result is such as might have been expected. With all the scribe's errors, *his* copy of the poem, when accurately reproduced, is, for the most part, extremely easy to understand, and leaves us in a state of wonderment as to the singular mode of procedure hitherto adopted. The "ingenious young gentleman" on whom the world has hitherto depended doubtless did the best he could, and it is to his credit that he copied the MS. for the public benefit. But he does not seem to have been always able to read the scribe's handwriting, and he thus introduced numerous needless difficulties, which the editors in some instances attempted to remove by guesswork, whilst in other cases they have allowed the most glaring nonsense to stand in the text, without a word of remark as to the impossibility of understanding it. For instances of this, see the description of Tytler's edition just below.

§ 26. It remains to give some account of the various printed editions. Perhaps the following list is not exhaustive, but it at any rate mentions the editions which are of most importance.

A. In 1783, a century ago, appeared anonymously the "Poetical Remains of James the First, King of Scotland; Edinburgh, printed for J. and E. Balfour, 1783." It contains a Dissertation on the Life and Writings of King James I., Remarks on Christ's Kirk of the Green, and on the King's

Quair ; the texts of these poems ; and a Dissertation on the Scottish Music. The editor was William Tytler, Esq., Writer to the Signet, and father of Lord Woodhouselee. A copy of the work here described, in the British Museum, contains also a short account of him, cut out of the European Magazine. He tells us that the King's Quair "was never before published." The editor's attention was drawn to it by a notice by Bishop Tanner, who had observed it amongst the Selden MSS. in the Bodleian Library. After an unsuccessful search for the MS., he at last applied "to an ingenious young gentleman, a student of Oxford, who undertook the task, and found the MS. accordingly. From a very accurate copy made by him" (says Mr Tytler) "the present publication is given." Unfortunately, the transcript was by no means a good one ; and the following examples of misreadings and misapprehensions exhibit extraordinary nonsense :—

- (a) "And freschly in thair birdis kynd araid,
Thaire fatheris new, and fret thame in the sonne" (35).

To make sense, delete the comma after *araid*, and read *fetheris*, as in the MS.

- (b) "So fere forth of my lyf the hevy lyne,
Without confort in sorowe, abandoune
The second sistere, lukit hath to tuyne,
Nere, by the space of zeris twice nyne," &c. (25).

To make sense, alter the punctuation.

- (c) "To lyve under zour law and so seruisse" (52).

For *so* read *do*, as in the MS.

- (d) "And, quhen sche walkit, had a lytill thrawe" (67)

Delete both the commas.

- (e) "There saw I sitt in order by thame *one*
With *hedis hore*," &c. (80).

Here the words in italics are so printed, and in other places we find words printed in italics for no discoverable reason. Tytler clearly supposed the above sentence to mean "*one* with *hoary head*," for he explains it by "*Prudence*, with his hoary head." But *hedis* is plural. For the true sense, see the note, p. 76.

(f) "And othir moyt I cannot on avise" (97).

For *moyt* the MS. has *mo y^t*, i.e. (others) besides, that.

(g) "O anker and treue, of oure gude aventure" (100).

For *treue* read *keye*, and delete the comma; see the note. Other examples might be added; thus in st. 4, the word *poetly* is printed *ϕoetly*; see the note. In stanza 24, *was* is printed *was we*, in defiance of grammar. In st. 36, *men* is printed *one*. In st. 45, *I-fallyn* (pp.) is printed *I fallying*. In st. 46, *emeraut* is printed *emerant*. In st. 106, *present* is printed *pent*; and, only two lines above, *humily* is printed *truely*. In st. 135, *fatoure* becomes *satoure*, which Chalmers explains by *satyr*! In st. 178, *list* is printed *lese*. In st. 185, *lufe* is printed *lyfe*; see the note. In st. 193, *rok* is printed *rok*; one wonders how "the rock of love" can be said to be "easy and sure." The queerest thing of all is the printing of an italic *Q* upside down, thus *Œ*, where the MS. merely has &, as usual; and the equally queer explanation that this singular symbol stands for the word *askewis* [presumably as *Q* is]; see note to st. 160. I draw attention to these points because it is easy to test the later editions by seeing how they are there treated. Nevertheless, with all its faults, Tytler's edition is certainly, upon the whole, the best. He took a good deal of trouble about the matter, and wrote numerous notes upon the poem, many of which are either interesting or helpful; and later editors have not

been slow to avail themselves of the information which they contain. They must, however, be consulted with caution, as he occasionally wholly mistakes the language of the author. Thus, in st. 44, the phrase *that dooth me sike* means "that causes me to sigh"; but Tytler's note is, "The word *sie*, or *syte*, in our old language, signifies grief or sorrow," which has nothing to do with the question. Again, in st. 53, Tytler rightly prints the last word as *plyte*, i.e. plight; but in his note he alters it to *pleyte*, remarking that "*pleyt* (sic), according to Chaucer, is a wreath or collar." In st. 56, he supposes *deuil*, i.e. devil, to be "the French *deuil*, sorrow"; and gives a false interpretation of the line accordingly. In st. 110, the transcriber wrote *tavartis* for *tabardis*, but Tytler guessed what was meant. He was not so fortunate in st. 116, where the transcriber wrote *yvete* for *ybete*, but explains *yvete* as "*y-wet* with my tears." It is also necessary to observe that the description of the Lady Joan cannot have been borrowed, as he supposes, from "Chaucer's Court of Love," for the reason that the poem so called is not Chaucer's, and is written in a form of English later than the former half of the fifteenth century.

B. "The works of James I., King of Scotland, containing the King's Quhair, Christis Kirk of the Grene, and Peblis to the Play. Perth, 1786." This is an anonymous edition; the editor's name was Robert Morison. It is practically a mere reprint of Tytler. The notes are "extracted (by permission)" from Tytler's. They are much abbreviated, and occupy only six pages. The volume also contains "Two ancient Scottish poems, commonly ascribed to King James V." These are (1) The Gaberlunzie Man; and (2) A Ballad of the Jollie Beggar, of which it is remarked that it "is surely *not* the composition of King James." It contains one

correction of Tytler's text—viz., in st. 161, where it is said that "the MS. has *Degoutit*, from the French word, *i.e.* spotted." This is right; Tytler has the unmeaning form *Degontit*.

C. In Sibbald's *Chronicle of Scottish Poetry*, 4 vols., Edinburgh, 1802, a large portion of the *Kingis Quair* is printed at pp. 14-54 of vol. i. He includes the whole of the poem excepting st. 1-19, 116-120, 182-186, 188-193, 195, 196; thus printing 160 stanzas out of 197. He numbers his stanzas from 1 to 160 continuously, so that his numbering does not agree with that of any other edition, nor does it show which are the omitted stanzas. He tells us that "this is the first *corrected* copy"; but the claim is not to be allowed. He attains, indeed, to the right reading *list* for Tytler's *lefe* in st. 178, l. 4; he proposes to read "To *pere* with perll," *i.e.* to be a peer to pearl, in the last line of st. 110, which is a great improvement; and he alters Tytler's *satoure* in st. 135 to *feator*, which is nearer to the MS. spelling *fatoure*. But it is evident that all he did was to send a copy of Tytler's book to the press, since the peculiarities of the first edition in printing certain words (needlessly and for no apparent reason) in italics, are all reproduced, as well as the very strange colophon beginning "EXPLICIT, ZIC, ZIC"; where ZIC is Tytler's singular way of printing &c. Indeed, he not only gives us again most of Tytler's errors, such as *we* for *vs* (24), *fatheris* for *fetheris* (35), *mester* for *minister* (43), *pent* for *present* (106), *tavartis* (110), *fund in* for *fundin* (169); but he introduces fresh errors of his own, such as *cost* for *cast* (60); *bruckt* (which is nonsense) for *gruch* (91); *trige* (which is nonsense) for Tytler's *treue*, the MS. reading being *keye* (100); *flouris* for *floure* (187); *impunis* for *impnis* (197). It will be seen,

therefore, that his "corrected copy" is of less value than the copy which he corrects.

D. The fourth edition is that of E. Thomson in 1815; see description of *F.* below, p. 1.

E. I next notice "The Poetic Remains of some of The Scottish Kings, now first collected by George Chalmers, Esq., F.R.S.A.S., &c., London, 1824." I take this edition to be much the worst of all; and its worthlessness is aggravated by the author's peculiarly dishonest course of procedure. He first quotes from Pinkerton's *Scottish Poems*, 1792, p. xxxvi, a statement that Tytler's text had been collated with the MS., when it was said to exhibit "upwards of three hundred variations, most of which are essential to the sense" (a statement which is certainly exaggerated). He next tells us that "another attempt was made, at an after period, by Mr David Laing, of Edinburgh, to collate the same poem; but he desisted, without accomplishing his object, seeing, perhaps, the said *three hundred variations*" (the italics are his). Thirdly, he tells us how he requested the late Rev. Rogers Ruding to collate the MS. for him; and "he did this accordingly, and found the printed copy to have many faults." And having thus prepared us for expecting great improvements, he suddenly explains his own method of editing in the following words: "As it is thus impossible to establish anything like uniformity in the spelling of the King's Quair, it has been thought fit to adopt altogether the present practice of orthography;" in other words, he proposes to use the modern spelling throughout. But when we open the book, we find that he has done nothing of the kind! He actually prints the poem according to the worst possible method, in a *mixed* spelling. Most of the words are in modernised

spelling, but the harder words are left in the old spelling, and are printed in italics. It is quite clear how this was accomplished. Having sufficiently abused Tytler's edition to throw his readers off the scent, he *sent a copy of Tytler's edition to press, in which he doubtless underlined all the hard words*. Consequently the printers printed all these words in italics, and modernised the spelling of all the rest. That this was the course adopted, becomes still clearer when we examine the footnotes to Chalmers's text; *for almost all these footnotes are exactly reprinted from the footnotes in Tytler's edition*. The matter is made still worse by the wily device of inserting "Tytler" at the end of a note on p. 52, thus naturally leading the innocent reader to suppose that the notes which are *not* so marked were written by himself. It is a comfort to think that he was found out; for Mr Irving, in his *History of Scottish Poetry*, ed. 1861, p. 135, speaks of Chalmers's edition in the following terms: "According to the modern practice of book-making, his [Tytler's] notes are here appropriated without the slightest acknowledgment; and the process of modernizing the spelling is in many instances equivalent to a translation." Still, not even Mr Irving seems to have discovered the ingenious process by which Mr Chalmers contrived to steal, not only without acknowledgment, but by the very help of abuse, the *text as well as the notes* of the editor who preceded him. It is true that Mr Chalmers added just a few notes of his own; but they are all of the most meagre kind, only three or four words long, and of no value; the curious reader may find them on pp. 68, 69 (note 5), 70 (note 8), 73 (note 6), 77 (note 3), 83 (note 2), 103 (note 1). I doubt if there are more which are wholly his, though in other places he adds just a few words. As a specimen, take note 6 on p. 73—

"*Stound*, or moment, or instant." Tytler's notes, on the other hand, are frequently of great length; one of them (Chalmers, p. 45) contains a quotation from the Court of Love, 49 lines long; another (Chalmers, p. 33) contains three quotations from Rymer's *Fœdera*, and various historical remarks. Moreover, after insisting on the "three hundred variations," and telling us how Mr Ruding made a collation for him, it is startling to find that he scarcely paid any attention to Mr Ruding's notes, and only made a few *silent* alterations, besides offering in the notes the six following remarks, which are all of the most trivial kind:—

St. 36, l. 7. The MS. has 'me'; Ruding. [No; 'men.']

45, l. 4. The MS. has 'fre'; Ruding. [I read it 'ferre.']

108, l. 7. The word 'graiice' is marked for deletion, and the mark is afterwards crossed out. [I say this in a note.]

109, l. 7. The words 'foule or' are written above 'doken'; Ruding. [I read them as 'foule on.']

125, l. 5. *Sad renewe* (Chalmers). The reading is correct (Ruding). [It really means that the reading *said renewe* (Tytler) is correct, and that Chalmers altered it!]

134, l. 7. Ruding speaks of the word *hend* [I read it *heid*, but say it is obscure] as belonging here.

This is all the merest trifling. None of these notes, except the fifth, gives us any help; and there *are only a few instances throughout the whole poem* of correction of the supposed "three hundred" errors. Further comment is needless.

F. "The King's Quair, a poem, by James, King of Scots; collated with an original manuscript, and illustrated from authentic sources, &c. By Ebenezer Thomson, of Ayr Academy. Second Edition, Ayr; 1824." This is a second

edition of a work, the first edition of which I have not seen, though there is a copy in the British Museum, printed at the same place in 1815. It is evident that Mr Thomson took very great pains with his work, and was extremely interested in it; we can only regret the difficulties in which he was placed concerning it. It was not till August 1823, when the proof-sheets of the greater part of the second edition were already printed, that he at last obtained his long-cherished desire of seeing the manuscript. He at once detected most of the more important errors, and took the opportunity of recording them either in his notes, or in a list of Errata at p. 97. I cannot but sympathise with his desire to do justice to the text, and it is a pity that he was able to do so little. His text is little better than a reprint of Tytler, but there are several remarks in the notes which I have found well worth consulting. It is much to be regretted that so zealous a worker had but slight opportunities, and that his book is disfigured by many remarks which reveal a sad ignorance of all philological principles. Thus he considers *tolter* as "a participle of *welter*"; and he derives *drest* from the "Ger. *driessen*, to vex." But he had consulted Chaucer's works with diligence, and discovered that the mysterious word *deuil*, which to Tytler seemed to be the French *deuil*, mourning, was nothing but the old spelling of *devil*; and he points to the fact that the phrase *a twenty devil way* occurs in the Legend of Ariadne, which is one of the stories in the Legend of Good Women. He might have added that it occurs again in other passages; see my notes to st. 56. He corrects Tytler's explanations of *dooth me sike* (44) and *pace* (69); and he corrects several false readings. I have carefully read his notes, and have adopted some of his illustrations.

G. An anonymous edition was printed at Glasgow in 1825. This is a mere reprint of Tytler, as is expressly stated. "The King's Quair was edited by W. Tytler, at Edinburgh, in 1783. In this new edition the editors have scrupulously followed the original printed one mentioned above." The reprint includes Tytler's Dissertation on the Scottish Music, and some Remarks on the Scottish Language; as well as a version of Peblis to the Play (p. 195), which is not included in Tytler's book, and a version of Christ's Kirk of the Greene (p. 213), which Tytler edited with the King's Quair. For the reader who desires to see Tytler's edition, and is unable to obtain it, this Glasgow reprint is almost as good as the old edition.

H. In "Specimens of English Literature from 1394 to 1579," edited by me in 1871, I gave a small portion of The Kingis Quair—viz., st. 152-173, numbered as in the present edition. I mention the fact, because this portion was edited *directly from the MS.*, and necessarily agrees throughout with that portion of the poem as it appears in the present volume. The only variation is in the use of italic *th* to represent the *y*, or rather the ill-written *þ*, of the MS.; in the present volume, it seemed to me sufficient to leave the "th" in roman letters, as there is no instance where the use of it leads to doubt. In the edition next mentioned, my work was ignored.

I. "The Poetical Remains of King James the First of Scotland, with a Memoir, &c. By the Rev. C. Rogers, LL.D., F.S.A. Scot., Historiographer to the Royal Historical Society. Edinburgh: printed for the Editor. 1873." This edition was limited to 150 copies only. There is a copy in the Bodleian Library, Oxford. "In the present work," says the editor, "the versions of Chalmers and Tyt-

ler have been collated, so as to form a text suitable to the period." The account of Chalmers's text above will show the want of wisdom of the plan adopted. The result is of course unsatisfactory ; and if ever this volume becomes valuable, it will be solely owing to its scarcity. We find the old errors reproduced, such as *tavartis* for *tabartis*, *yvete* for *ybete*, *satoure* for *fatoure*, and the like ; besides additional errors, such as *husing* for *hufing*, in st. 159, where Tytler is correct. The notes are few, and carefully avoid all difficult passages.

K. "The King's Quair ; a Poem by James the First, King of Scots. John Thomson : Glasgow. 1877." This is a reprint of E. Thomson's Ayr edition of 1824 ; but it admits into the text the corrections made by that editor in his notes. "Beyond the endeavour to present the poem in its *corrected* form, with the best procurable notes elucidatory of its meaning, nothing has been attempted."

§ 27. It thus appears that none of the editors except E. Thomson and myself ever saw the MS., and that, for all practical purposes, they have done little beyond reprinting the first incorrect text over and over again. The only complete text that gives us anything better is the latest impression, in 1877, of E. Thomson's edition ; and even this is imperfect, owing to the slight opportunity afforded him : he was only able to take some notes, "upon a rapid inspection of the MS." And hence it has come to pass that it has taken a whole century, and a series of about ten editions, merely to obtain a correct copy of a MS. which is in so accessible a place as the Bodleian Library, and does not extend to so much as fourteen hundred lines. But a great change for the better has taken place of late years in the manner of editing texts, and it is now an acknowledged principle that an

accurate representation of the MS. authorities is of primary importance.

§ 28. The Notes are, to a large extent, original, though I have occasionally borrowed from Tytler and E. Thomson where they are clearly right. I also discuss some of the more remarkable variations from the MS. in the different editions. Much gain has resulted from the comparison of the language of the poem with the language of Chaucer. We are thus able to trace a large number of parallel passages, and to establish the laws of metre (and to some extent of grammar) which guided the royal author in his work. I have also found a familiarity with the language of Barbour of much service; so that the only passages still left obscure are two or three which are manifestly corrupt, where we are left at the mercy of the scribe of the unique MS. original. With these exceptions, the language of the author is extremely simple and easy to any one who has some knowledge of Middle English; his metre is harmonious, and subject (with well-defined exceptions) to the laws which have been laid down for the scansion of Chaucer; whilst a complete scheme of his grammar might easily be deduced, and has, in a great measure, been indicated.

§ 29. The Glossarial Index is almost wholly new, and has purposely been made a very full one, with references to the stanzas. In preparing it, I have received some assistance from my eldest daughter. The only previous glossary is one three pages long, at the end of E. Thomson's edition; but it is useless from its omission of references. Some of the words are explained in Jamieson's Dictionary; and I have therefore taken the opportunity of pointing out cases where Jamieson has been misled by Tytler, as, *e.g.*, in the

case of the non-existent word *foringit*. See p. 113. Those who are interested in grammatical details will of course consult Dr Murray's essay on The Dialect of the Southern Counties of Scotland, published by Asher & Co. in 1873.

§ 30. The literary merit of the poem has been often discussed, and I have nothing more to say about it here. To point out the beauties or the demerits of a poem is not always a kindness to the reader ; for it deprives him of the pleasure of forming his own judgment upon a subject which he may be peculiarly competent to consider.



THE KINGIS QUAIR



Heirefter followis the quair Maid be King Iames of scotland the first callit the kingis quair and Maid quhen his Mailestie Wes In Ingland.

1 **H**EIGH In the hevynnis figure circulere
The rody sterres twynklyng as the fyre ;
And, In Aquary, Citherea¹ the clere
Rynsid hir tressis like the goldin wyre,
That late tofore, In fair and fresche atyre,
Through capricorn heved hir hornis bright,
North northward approchit the myd-nyght ;

2 Quhen as I lay In bed allone waking,
New partit out of slepe a lyte tofore,
Fell me to mynd of many diuerse thing,
Off this and that ; can I *nocht* say quharfore,
Bot slepe for craft in erth myght I no more ;
For quhich as tho coude I no better wyle,
Bot toke a boke to rede apon a quhile :

3 Off quhich the name Is clepit properly
Boece, eftere him *that* was the compiloure,
Schewing [the] counsele of philosophye,
Compilit by that noble senatoure
Off rome, quhilom *that* was the warldis floure,
And from estatē by fortune a quhile
Foriugit was to pouert in exile :

4 And there to here this worthy lord and clerk,
His metir suete, full of moralitee ;
His flourit pen so fair he set a-werk,

¹ *Read Cinthia.*

Discryving first of his prosperitee,
 And out of that his infelicitie;
 And than how he, in his poetly report,
 In philosophy can him to confort.

5 For quhich thoght I in *purpose*, at my boke,
 To borowe a slepe at thilkē tyme began;
 Or *euer* I stent, my best was more to loke
 Vpon the writing of this noble man,
 That in him-self the full recouer wan
 Off his Infortune, pouert,¹ and distresse,
 And in tham set his verray sekernesse.

6 And so the vertew of his youth before
 Was in his age the ground of his delytis:
 Fortune the bak him *turnyt*, and therfore
 He makith Ioye and confort, *that* he quit is²
 Off their³ vnsekir warldis appetitis;
 And so aworth he takith his penance,
 And of his vertew maid It suffisance:

7 With mony a noble resoun, as him likit,
 Enditing In his fairē latyne tong,
 So full of fruyte, and rethorikly pykit,
 Quhich to declare my scole is *ouer* zong;
 Therefore I lat him pas, and, in my tong,
 Procede I will agayn to my sentence
 Off my *mater*, and leue all Incidence.

8 The long[ē] nyght beholding, as I saide,
 Myn eyen⁴ gan to smert for studying;
 My buke I schet, and at my hede It laide;
 And douñ I lay bot ony tarying,
 This *mater* new[ē] In my mynd rolling;

¹ MS. pouerti; but the i is ignorantly added by a later hand.

² MS. quitis.

³ Read thir.

⁴ MS. eyne; see st. 41.

This Is to seynë, how that eche estate,
As fortune lykith, thame will [oft] translate.

9 For sothe It is, that, on hir tolter quhele,
 Euery wight cleuerith In his stage,
And failyng foting oft, quhen hir lest rele,
 Sum vp, sum douñ, Is noñ estate nor age
 Ensured, more the pryncë than the page :
So vncouthly hir werdes sche deuidith,
Namly In 3outh, that seildin ought prouidith.

10 Among thir thoughtis rolling to and fro,
 Fell me to mynd of my fortune and vre ;
In tender 3outh how sche was first my fo,
 And eft my frende, and how I gat recure
 Off my distresse, and all myn auenture
I gan our-hayle, that langer slepe ne rest
Ne myght I nat, so were my wittis wrest.

11 For-wakit and for-walowit, thus musing,
 Wery, forlyin, I lestnyt sodaynlye,
And sone I herd the bell to matyñs ryng,
 And vp I rase, no langer wald I lye :
 Bot now, how trowe 3e ? suich a fantasye
Fell me to mynd, that ay me thoght the bell
Said to me, "tell on, man, quhat the befell."

12 Thoght I tho to my-self, "quhat may this be ?
 This is myn awin ymagynacioun ;
It is no lyf that spekis vnto me ;
 It is a bell, or that impressioun
 Off my thoght causith this Illusioun,
That dooth me think so nycely in this wise ;"
And so befell as I schall 3ou deuise.

- 13 ~~Det~~myt furth therewith In myn entent,
 Sen I thus haue ymagynit of this souñ,
 And in my tyme more Ink and paper spent
 To lyte effect, I tuke conclusioun
 Sum new[ē] thing to write ; I set me douñ,
 And furth-with-all my pen In hand I tuke,
 And maid a ✠, and thus begouth my buke.
- 14 THOU [sely]¹ youth, of nature Indegest,
 Vnrypit fruyte with windis variable ;
 Like to the bird that fed is on the nest,
 And can noght flee ; of wit wayke and vnstable,
 To fortune both and to Infortune hable ;
 Wist thou thy payne to cum² and thy trauaille,
 For sorow and drede wele myght thou wepe and waille.
- 15 Thus stant thy confort In vnsekernesse,
 And wantis It that suld the reule and gye :
 Ryght as the schip that sailith sterëles
 Vpon the rok[kis]³ most to harmes hye,
 For lak of It that suld beñe hir supplye ;
 So standis thou here In this warldis rage,
 And wantis that suld gyde all thy viage.
- 16 I mene this by my-self, as In partye ;
 Though nature gave me suffisance In youth,
 The rypenesse of resoun [3it] lak[it] I,
 To gouerne with my will ; so lyte I couth,
 Quhen sterëles to trauaile I begouth,
 Among the wawis of this world to driue ;
 And how the case, anoon I will discriue.

¹ MS. Though (*for* Thou) ; sely is omitted ; cf. st. 44, 134.

² MS. tocum (*one word*).

³ MS. rok ; but see st. 17, l. 1 ; st. 18, l. 1.

17 With doutfull hert, amang the rokkis blake,
 My feble bote full fast to stere and rowe,
 Helples allone, the wynter nyght I wake,
 To wayte the wynd ~~that~~ furthward suld me throwe.
 O empti saile ! quhare is the wynd suld blowe
 Me to the port, quhar gynneth all my game?
 Help, Calyope, and wynd, in Marye name !

18 The rokkis clepe I the prolixitee
 Off doubilnesse ~~that~~ doith my wittis pall :
 The lak of wynd is the deficultee
 In enditing of this lytill treti small :
 The bote I clepe the mater hole of all :
 My wit vnto the saile ~~that~~ now I wynd,
 To seke connyng, though I bot lytill fynd.

19 At my begynnynge first I clepe and call
 To 3ow, Cleo, and to 3ow, polymye,
 With Thesiphone, goddis and sistris all,
 In nowmer ix., as bokis specifye ;
 In this processe my wilsum wittis gye ;
 And with 3our bryght lanternis wele conuoye
 My pen, to write my turment and my Ioye !

20 In verē, ~~that~~ full of vertu is and gude,
 Quhen nature first begynneth hir enprise,
 That quhilum was be cruell frost and flude
 And schouris scharp opprest In many wyse,
 And Synthius [be]gynneth to aryse
 Heigh in the est, a morow soft and suete,
 Vpward his course to driue In ariete :

21 Passit mydday bot¹ fourē greis evin,
 Off lenth and brede his angel wingis bryght
 He spred vpon the ground douñ fro the hevin ;

¹ MS. Passit bot mydday.

That, for gladnesse and confort¹ of the sight,
 And with the tiklyng of his hete and light,
 The tender flouris opnyt thame and sprad;
 And, in thaire nature, thankit him for glad.

22 Noght fer passit the state of Innocence,
 Bot nere about the nowmer of 3eris thre,
 Were It causit throu hevinly Influence
 Off goddis will, or othir casualtee,
 Can I noght say; bot out of my contree,
 By thaire advise that had of me the cure,
 Be see to pas, tuke I myn auenture.

23 Puruait of all that was vs necessarye,
 With wynd at will, vp airly by the morowe,
 Streight vnto schip, no longer wold we tarye,
 The way we tuke, the tyme I tald to-forowe;
 With mony "fare wele" and "sanct Iohne to borowe"
 Off falowe and frende; and thus with one assent
 We pullit vp saile, and furth our wayis went.

24 Vpon the wawis weltering to and fro,
 So infortunate was vs that fremyt day,
 That maugre, playnly, quhethir we wold or no,
 With strong hand, [as] by forse, schortly to say,
 Off Inmyis takin and led away
 We weren all, and broght in thaire contree;
 Fortune It schupe non othir wayis to be.

25 Quhare as In straye ward and in strong prissoun,
 So fer-forth, of my lyf the heuy lyne,
 Without confort, in sorowe abandoun,
 The second suster lukit hath to twyne,
 Nere by the space of 3eris twise² nyne;

¹ Confort, in the margin, is substituted for freschenesse.

² Read twiës (the usual Chaucerian dissyllabic form).

Till Iupiter his *merci* list aduert,
And send confort in relesche of my smert.

- 26 Quhare as In ward full oft I wold bewaille
My dedely lyf, full of peyne and penance,
Saing ryght thus, quhat haue I gilt to faille
My fredome in this warld and my plesance?
Sen *euery* wight has theræof suffisance,
That I behold, and I a creature
Put from all this—hard Is myn auenture !
- 27 The bird, the beste, the fisch eke In the see,
They lyve in fredome euerich In his kynd ;
And I a man, and lakkith libertee ;
Quhat schall I seyne, quhat resoun may I fynd,
That fortune suld do so? thus In my mynd
My folk I wold argewe, bot all for noght ;
Was noon that myght, that on my peynes rought.
- 28 Than wold I say, “ gif god me had deuisit
To lyve my lyf in thraldome thus and pyne,
Quhat was the cause that he [me] more comprisit
Than othir folk to lyve in suich ruynes?
I suffer allone among the figuris nyne,
Ane wofull wrecche that to no wight may spede,
And ȝit of *euery* lyvis help¹ hath nede.”
- 29 The long[ë] dayes and the nyghtis eke
I wold bewaille my fortune in this wise,
For quhich, agane distressæ confort to seke,
My custum was on mornis for to ryse
Airly as day ; o happy excercise !
By the come I to Ioye out of turment.
Bot now to purpose of my first entent :—

¹ In drede was written after help, but is crossed through.

- 30 Bewailing In my chamber thus allone,
 Despeired of all Ioye and remedye,
 For-tirit of my thoght, and wo begone,
 Unto¹ the wyndow gan I walk In hye,
 To se the world and folk that went forby ;
 As for the tyme, though I of mirthis fude
 Myght haue no more, to luke It did me gude.
- 31 Now was there maid fast by the touris wall
 A gardyn faire, and in the corneris set
 Ane herbere grene, with wandis long and small
 Railit about ; and so with treis set
 Was all the place, and hawthorn hegis knet,
 That lyf was noon walking there forby,
 That myght within scarce ony wight aspye.
- 32 So thik the bewis and the leues grene
 Beschadit all the aleyes that there were,
 And myddis euery herbere myght be sene
 The scharp[ē] grenē suetē Ienepere,
 Growing so faire with branchis here and there,
 That, as It semyt to a lyf without,
 The bewis spred the herbere all about ;
- 33 And on the small[ē] grenē twistis sat
 The lytill suetē nyghtingale, and song
 So loud and clere, the ympnis consecrat
 Off lufis vse, now soft, now lowd among,
 That all the gardyng and the wallis rong
 Ryght of thaire song, and on² the copill next
 Off thaire suete armony, and lo the text :

Cantus.

- 34 "Worschippē, ȝe that loueris bene, this may,
 For of ȝour blisse the kalendis are begonne,
 And sing with vs, away, winter, away !

¹ MS. And to.² Perhaps we should read of.

Cum, somer, cum, the suete sesoun and sonne!
 Awake for schame! that haue ~~your~~ hevynnis wonne,
 And amorously lift vp ~~your~~ hedis all,
 Thank lufe that list ~~you~~ to his merci call."

- 35 Quhen thai this song had song a lytill thrawe,
 Thai stent a quhile, and therewith vnaffraid,
 As I beheld and kest myn eyne a-lawe,
 From beugh to beugh thay hippit and thai plaid,
 And freschly in thaire birdis kynd arraid
 Thaire fetheris new, and fret thame In the sonne,
 And thankit lufe, that had thaire mækis wonne.

- 36 This was the planë ditee of thaire note,
 And therewith all vnto my-self I thoght,
 "Quhat lyf is this, that makis birdis dote?
 Quhat may this be, how cummyth It of ought?
 Quhat nedith It to be so dere ybought?
 It is nothing, trowe I, bot feynit chere,
 And that men list to counterfeten chere."

- 37 Eft wald I think; "o lord, quhat may this be?
 That lufe is of so noble myght and kynde,
 Lufing his folk, and suich prosperitee
 Is It of him, as we in bukis fynd?
 May he our hertes setten and vnbynd?
 Hath he vpon our hertis suich maistrye?
 Or all this is bot feynyt fantasye!

- 38 For gif he be of so grete excellence,
 That he of every wight hath cure and charge,
 Quhat haue I gilt to him or doon offense,
 That I am thrall, and birdis gone at large,
 Sen him to serue he myght set my corage?

And gif he be *noght* so, than may I seyne,
 Quhat *maki's* folk to Iangill of him In veyne?

- 39 Can I *noght* elles fynd, bot gif that he
 Be lord, and as a god may lyue and regne,
 To bynd and louse, and maken thrallis free,
 Than wold I pray his blisfull grace benigne,
 To hable me vnto his *seruice* digne;
 And *euermore* for to be one of tho
 Him trewly for to *serue* In wele and wo.
- 40 And ~~there-with~~ kest I douñ myn eye ageyne,
 Quhare as I sawe, walking vnder the tourz,
 Full secretly new *cummyn* hir to pleyne,
 The fairest or the freschest *ʒong[ē]* floure
 That *euer* I sawe, me *thoght*, before that houre,
 For quhich sodayn abate, anofn astert
 The blude of all my body to my hert.
- 41 And though I stude abaisit tho a lyte,
 No wonder was; for-quhy my wittis all
 Were so ouercom̃ *with* plesance and delyte,
 Onely throu latting of myn eyen fall,
 That sudaynly my hert became hir thrall,
 For *euer*, of free wyll; for of manace
 There was no takyn In hir suetē face.
- 42 And In my hede I drewe *ryght* hastily,
 And eft-sonēs I lent It forth ageyne,
 And sawe hir walk, that verray womanly,
 With no wight mo, bot onely *wommen* tueyne.
 Than gan I studye in my-self and seyne,
 "A! suete, ar ʒe a warldly creature,
 Or hevinly thing in likenesse of nature?"

43 Or ar ȝe god Cupidis owin princesse,
 And cummyn are to louse me out of band?
 Or ar ȝe verray nature the goddessse,
 That haue depaynted *with* ȝour hevinly hand
 This gardyn full of flouris, as they stand?
 Quhat sall I think, allace! quhat reuerence
 Sall I min[i]ster to ȝour excellence?

44 Gif ȝe a goddessse be, and that ȝe like
 To do me payne, I may It noght astert;
 Gif ȝe be warldly wight, that dooth me sike,
 Quhy lest god mak ȝou so, my derrest hert,
 To do a sely prisoner thus smert,
 That lufis ȝow all, and wote of noght bot wo?
 And therefor, *merci*, suete! sen It is so."

45 Quhen I a lytill thrawe had maid my moon,
 Bewailling myn infortune and my chance,
 Vnknawin how or quhat was best to doon,
 So ferrē I-fallyng Into lufis dance,
 That sodeynly my wit, my contenance,
 My hert, my will, my nature, and my mynd,
 Was changit clene ryg^{ht} In añ-othir kynd.

46 Off hir array the for^m gif I sall write,
 Toward hir goldin hairē and rich atyre
 In fret-wisē couchit [was] *with* perllis quhite
 And gretē balas lemyng as the fyre,
With mony ane emeraut and fairē saphire;
 And on hir hede a chaplet fresch of hewe,
 Off plumys partit rede, and quhite, and blewe;

47 Full of quaking spangis bryg^{ht} as gold,
 Forgit of schap like to the amorettis,
 So new, so fresch, so plesant to behold,

The plumys eke like to the flour-Ionettis,
 And othir of schap like to the [round crokettis],¹
 And, aboue all this, there was, wele I wote,
 Beautee eneuch to mak a world to dote.

48 About hir nek, quhite as the fyre amaille,
 A gudely cheyne of smale orfeurye,
 Quharby there hang a ruby, *with*out faille,
 Lyke to ane hert[ē] schapin verily,
 That, as a sperk of lowe, so wantonly
 Semyt birnyng vpon hir quhytē throte ;
 Now gif there was gud partye, god It wote !

49 And forto walk that freschē mayes morowe,
 Añ huke sche had vpon hir tissew quhite,
 That gudeliar had noght bene sene toforowe,
 As I suppose ; and girt sche was a lyte ;
 Thus halflyng louse for haste, to suich delyte
 It was to see hir youth In gudelihede,
 That for rudenes to speke therof I drede.

50 In hir was youth, beautee, *with* humble apert,
 Bountee, riches, and wommanly facture,
 God better wote than my pen can report :
 Wisdome, largesse, estate, and connyng sure
 In euery poynt so guydit hir mesure,
 In word, in dede, in schap, in contenance,
 That nature myght no more hir childe auance.

51 Throw quhich anoñ I knew and vnderstude
 Wele, that sche was a warldly creature ;
 On quhom to rest myn eyē, so mich gude
 It did my wofull hert, I ȝow assure,
 That It was to me Ioye *with*out mesure ;

¹ The MS. repeats flour Ionettis, evidently by mistake ; my insertion is conjectural.

And, at the last, my luke vnto the hevin
I threwe furthwith, and said thir versis sevin :

- 52 "O *venus* clere ! of goddis stellifyt !
To quhom I zelde homage and sacrifice,
Fro this day forth *your* grace be magnifyt,
That me ressaute haue in suich [a] wise,
To lyve vnder *your* law and do *seruise* ;
Now help me furth, and for *your* *merci* lede
My hert to rest, that deis nere for drede."
- 53 Quhen I *wit*h gude entent this orisoun
Thus endit had, I stynt a lytill stound ;
And eft myn eye full pitously adoun
I kest, behalding vnto hir lytill hound,
That *wit*h his bellis playit on the ground ;
Than wold I say, and sigh there-*wit*h a lyte,
"A ! wele were him that now were In thy plyte !"
- 54 Añ-othir quhile the lytill nyghtingale,
That sat apon the twiggis, wold I chide,
And say ryg^{ht} thus ; "quhare are thy notis smale,
That thou of loue has song this morowe-tyde ?
Seis thou nog^{ht} hir that sittis the besyde ?
For *Venus* sake, the blisfull goddesse clere,
Sing on agane, and mak my lady chere.
- 55 And eke I pray, for all the paynes grete,
That, for the loue of proigne thy sister dere,
Thou sufferit quhilom, quhen thy brestis wete
Were with the teres of thyne eyen clere,
All bludy ronne ; that pitee was to here
The crueltee of that vnknyg^{ht}ly dede,
Quhare was fro the bereft thy maidenhede,

- 56 Lift vp thyne hert, and sing *witȝ* gude entent ;
 And in thy notis suete the tresoñ telle,
 That to thy sister trewe and Innocent
 Was kythit by hir husband false and fell ;
 For quhois gilt, as It is worthy wel,
 Chide thir husbandis that are false, I say,
 And bid thame mend, In the twenty¹ deuil way.
- 57 O lytill wrecch, allace ! maist thou nogȝt se
 Quho *commyth* ȝond ? Is It now tyme to wring ?
 Quhat sory thogȝt is fallin vpon the ?
 Opyn thy throte ; hastow no lest to sing ?
 Allace ! sen thou of resoñ had felyng,
 Now, suetȝ bird, say ones to me ‘pepe ;’
 I dee for wo ; me think thou gynnys slepe.
- 58 Hastow no mynde of lufe ? quhare is thy make ?
 Or artow seke, or smyt *witȝ* Ielousye ?
 Or Is sche dede, or hath sche the forsake ?
 Quhat is the cause of thy malancolye,
 That thou no more list maken melodye ?
 Sluggart, for schame ! lo here thy goldin hour,
 That worth were hale all thy lyvis laboure !
- 59 Gyf thou suld sing wele euer in thy lyve,
 Here is, in fay, the tyme, and eke the space :
 Quhat wostow than ? sum bird may cum and stryve
 In song *witȝ* the, the maistry to purchase.
 Suld thou than cesse, It were grete schame, allace !
 And here, to wyn gree happily for euer,
 Here is the tyme to syng, or ellis neuer.”
- 60 I thogȝt eke thus, gif I my handis clap,
 Or gif I cast, than will sche flee away ;
 And gif I hald my² pes, than will sche nap ;

¹ MS. xxtj.² MS. me.

And gif I crye, sche wate *noght* quhat I say :
 Thus, quhat is best, wate I *noght* be this day :
 "Bot blawe wynd, blawe, and do the leuis schake,
 That sum twig may wag, and mak hir to wake."

- 61 With that *anoñ ryght* [sc]he toke vp a sang,
 Quhare come *anoñ* mo birdis and alight ;
 Bot than, to here the mirth was *tham* amang,
 Ouer that to, to see the *suetē* sicht
 Off hyr ymage, my spirit was so light,
 Me *thoght* I flawe for Ioye *without* arest,
 So were my wittis boundin all to fest.
- 62 And to the notis of the philomene,
 Quhilkis sche sang, the ditee there I maid
 Direct to hire that was my hertis quene,
 Withoutin quhom no songis may me glade ;
 And to that sanct, [there] walking in the schade,
 My bedis thus, with humble hert entere,
 Deuotly [than] I said on this manere.

- 63 "Quhen sall *your merci* rew vpon *your* man,
 Quhois *seruice* is *jit* vncouth vnto *you* ?
 Sen, quhen *ye* go, ther is *noght* ellis than :
 Bot, hert ! quhere as the body may *noght* throu,
 Folow thy hevin ! quho suld be glad bot thou
 That suich a gyde to folow has *vndertake* ?
 Were It throu hell, the way thou *noght* forsake !"

- 64 And *after* this, the birdis *euerichone*
 Tuke vp *an* othir sang full loud and clere,
 And *with* a voce said, "wele is vs begone,
 That with *oure* makis *are* togidre here ;
 We proyne and play *without* dout and dangere,
 All clothit In a soyte full fresch and newe,
 In lufis *seruice* besy, glad, and trewe.

65 And 3e, fresche may, ay *mercifull* to bridis,
 Now welcum be 3e, *floure* of monethis all;
 For *noght* onely *your* grace vpon vs bydis,
 Bot all the warld to witnes this we call,
 That strowit hath so playnly ouer all
 With new[ë] freschë suete and tender grene,
 Oure lyf, oure lust, oure *gouernoure*, oure quene."

66 This was thair song, as semyt me full heye,
 With full mony vncouth suete note and schill,
 And therewith-all that faire vpward hir eye
 Wold cast amang, as It was goddis will,
 Quhare I myght se, standing allane full still,
 The faire facture *that* nature, for maistrye,
 In hir visage wroght had full lufingly.

67 And, quhen sche walkit had a lytill thrawe
 Vnder the suetë grenë bewis bent,
 Hir faire fresche face, as quhite as ony snawe,
 Scho turnyt has, and furth hir wayis went;
 Bot tho began myn axis and *turment*,
 To sene hir part, and folowe I na myght;
 Me thoght the day was turnyt into nyght.

68 Than said I thus, "quhare [un]to lyve I langer?
 Wofullest wicht, and subiect vnto peyne;
 Of peyne? no: god wote, 3a: for thay no stranger
 May wirken ony wight, I dare wele seyne.
 How may this be, *that* deth and lyf, bothe tueyne,
 Sall bothe atonis in a creature
 Togidder duell, and *turment* thus nature?

69 I may *noght* ellis done bot wepe and waile,
 With-In thir cald[ë] wallis thus I-lokin;
 From henn[e]sfurth my rest is my trauaile;

My dryë thrist *witȝ* *teris* sall I slokin,
 And on my-self bene al my harmys wrokin :
 Thus bute is none ; bot *venur*, of hir grace,
 Will schape remede, or do my spirit pace.

- 70 As Tantalus I trauaile ay but-les,
 That *euer* ylikë hailith at the well
 Water to draw *witȝ* buket botemles,
 And may *nogȝt* spede ; quhois penance is aȝn hell :
 So by my-self this tale I may wele telle,
 For vnto hir that herith *nogȝt* I pleyne ;
 Thus like to him my trauaile Is In veyne."

- 71 So sore thus sight I *witȝ* my-self allone,
 That *turmyt* is my strenth In febilnesse,
 My wele in wo, my frendis all in fone,
 My lyf in deth, my *lygȝt* into dirknesse,
 My hope in feer, in dout my sekirnesse ;
 Sen sche is gone : and god mote hir conuoye,
 That me may gyde to *turment* and to Ioye !

- 72 The long[ë] day thus gan I pryë and poure,
 Till phebus endit had his bemes *brygȝt*,
 And bad go farewele *euery* lef and floure,
 This is to say, approch[en] gan the *nygȝt*,
 And Esperus his lampis gan to light ;
 Quhen in the wyndow, still as any stone,
 I bade at lenth, and, kneling, maid my mone.

- 73 So lang till evin, for lak of *mygȝt* and mynd,
 For-wepit and for-pleynit pitously,
 Ourset so sorow had bothe hert and mynd,
 That to the cold[ë] stone my hede on wrye
 I laid, and lent, amaisit verily,
 Half sleping and half *suouȝn*, In suich a wise :
 And quhat I met, I will *ȝow* now deuise.

- 74 Me *thoght* that thus all sodeynly a *lyght*
 In at the wyndow come quhare that I lent,
 Off quhich the chamberz-wyndow schone full *bryght*,
 And all my body so It hath *ouerwent*,
 That of my sight the *vertew* hale Iblent ;
 And that *wit*-all a voce vnto me saide,
 " I bring the confort and hele, be *noght* affrayde."
- 75 And furth anon It passit sodeynly,
 Quher It come In, the *ryght*[*ē*] way ageyne,
 And sone, me *thoght*, furth at the dure in hye
 I went my weye, nas nothing me ageyne ;
 And hastily, by bothe the armes tueyne,
 I was araisit vp in-to the aire,
 Clippit in a cloude of cristall clere and fair.
- 76 Ascending vpward ay fro spere to spere,
 Through aire and water and the hotē fyre,
 Till that I come vnto the circle clere
 Off Signifere, quhare fair, *bryght*, and schire,
 The signis schone ; and In the glade empire
 Off blisfull *venus*, [quhar] ane cryit now
 So sudaynly, almost I wist *noght* how.
- 77 Off quhich the place, quhen [as] I com there nye,
 Was all, me *thoght*, of cristall stonis wroght,
 And to the port I liftit was In hye,
 Quhare sodaynly, as quho sais at a *thoght*,
 It opnyt, and I was anon In broght
 Wit~~h~~in a chamber, largē, rowm, and fair ;
 And there I fand of peple grete repair.
- 78 This Is to seyne, that present in that place
 Me *thoght* I sawe of euery nacioun
 Loueris that endit [had] thair lyfis space

In lovis *seruice*, mony a mylioun,
 Off quhois *chancis* maid is *mencioun*
 In *diuerse* bukis, quho thame list to se;
 And *therefore* here thair namys lat I be.

- 79 The quhois *auenture* and grete labouris
 Aboue thair *hedis* writin there I fand;
 This is to seyne, martris and confessouris,
 Ech in his stage, and his make in his hand;
 And *therewith*-all thir peple sawe I stand,
With mony a solemp[ni]t contenance,
 After as lufe thame lykit to auance.
- 80 Off gude folkis, that faire In lufe befill,
 There saw I sitt In *order* by thame one
With *hedis* hore; and *with* thame stude gude-will
 To talk and play; and *after* that anoñ
 Besydis¹ thame and next there saw I gone
 Curage, amang the fresche folkis jong,
 And *with* thame playit full merily and song.

- 81 And In ane othir stage, endlong the wall,
 There saw I stand, In capis wyde and lang,
 A full grete nowmer; bot thair hudis all,
 Wist I *noght* quhy, atoure thair eyen hang;
 And ay to thame come repentance amang,
 And maid thame chere, degysit in his wede:
 And downward *after* that ȝit I tuke hede;

- 82 Ryght ouerthwert the chamber was there drawe
 A trevesse thin and quhite, all of plesance,
 The quhich behynd, standing there I sawe
 A warld of folk, and by thair contenance
 Thair hertis semyt full of displesance,

¹ MS. Besyde (*badly*).

With billis In thair~~e~~ handis, of one assent
Vnto the Iuge thair~~e~~ playntis to *present*.

- 83 And there-*with*-all apperit vnto me
A voce, and said, "tak hede, man, and behold:
3onder¹ thou seis the hiest stage and gree
Off agit folk, *with* hedis hore and olde;
3one were the folke that neuer changē wold
In lufe, bot trewly *seruit* him alway,
In *euery* age, vnto thair~~e~~ ending-day.
- 84 For fro the tyme that thai coud vnderstand
The exercise, of lufis craft the cure,
Was noñ on lyve that toke so moch on hand
For lufis sake, nor langer did endure
In lufis *seruice*; for man, I the assure,
Quhen thay of 3outh ressauit had the fill,
3it In thair~~e~~ age tham lakkit no gude will.
- 85 Here bene also of suich as In counsailis
And all-thar dedis, were to *venus* trewe;
Here bene the princis, faucht the grete bataillis,
In mynd of quhom ar maid the bukis newe,
Here beñ the poetis that the sciencis knewe,
Throwout the warld, of lufe in thair~~e~~ suete layes,
Suich as Ouide and Omer~~e~~ in thair~~e~~ dayes.
- 86 And *after* thame down In the next[ē] stage,
There as thou seis the 3ong[ē] folkis pleye:
Lo! this~~e~~ were thay that, in thair~~e~~ myddill age,
Seruandis were to lufe in mony weye,
And diuersely happinnit for to deye;
Sum soroufully, for wanting of thare makis,
And sum in armes for thair~~e~~ ladyes sakis.

¹ MS. 3onder there; *but there is not wanted.*

- 87 And othir eke by othir diuerse chance,
 As happin folk all day, as ȝe may se ;
 Sum for dispaire, *without* recoueraunce ;
 Sum for desyre, surmounting thaire degree ;
 Sum for dispite and othir Inmytee ;
 Sum for vnkyndenes *without* a quhy ;
 Sum for to moch, and sum for Ielousye.
- 88 And *after* this, vpon ȝone stage [a]douñ,
 Tho *that* thou seis stond in capis wyde ;
 ȝone were quhilum folk of religioun,
 That from the world thaire gouernance did hide,
 And frely *seruit* lufe on *euery* syde
 In secrete, *with* thaire bodyis and thaire gudis.
 And lo ! quhy so thai hingen douñ thaire hudis :
- 89 For though *that* thai were hardy at assay,
 And did him *seruice* quhilum priuely,
 ȝit to the warldis eye It semyt nay ;
 So was thaire *seruice* half[del] cowardy :
 And for thay first forsuke him opynly,
 And *after* that ther~~of~~ had repenting,
 For schame thaire hudis our~~e~~ thaire eyne thay hyng.
- 90 And seis thou now ȝone multitude, on rawe
 Standing, behynd ȝone trauser~~e~~ of delyte ?
 Sum bene of thañ *that* haldin were full lawe,
 And take by frendis, nothing thay to wyte,
 In ȝouth from lufe Into the cloistere quite ;
 And for that cause *are* cummyn recounsilit,
 On thame to pleyne *that* so thañ had begilit.
- 91 And othir bene amongis thame also,
 That cummyn ar to court, on lufe to pleyne,
 For he thaire bodyes had bestowit so,

Quhare bothe thair hertes gruch[en] ther-ageyne;
 For quhich, In all thair dayes, soth to seyne,
 Quhen othir lyvit In Ioye and [in] plesance,
 Thair lyf was noght bot care and repentance;

92 And quhare thair hertis gevin were and set,
 Coplit¹ with othir that coud noght accord;
 Thus were thai wrangit that did no forfet,
 Departing thame that neuer wold discord;
 Off ȝong[ē] ladies faire, and mony lord,
 That thus by maistry were fro thair chose dryve,
 Full redy were thair playntis there to gyve."

93 And othir also I sawe compleynyng there
 Vpon fortune and hir grete variance,
 That quhere In loue so wele they coplit were,
 With thair suete makis coplit in plesance,
 Sche² sodeynly maid thair disseuerance,
 And tuke thame of this warldis companye,
 Withoutin cause, there was noȝ othir quhy.

94 And in a chiere of estate besyde,
 With wingis bright, all plumyt, bot his face,
 There sawe I sitt the blynd[ē] god Cupide,
 With bow In hand, that bent full redy was,
 And by him hang thre arowis In a cas,
 Off quhich the hedis grundyn were full ryght,
 Off diuerse metals forgit faire and bryght.

95 And with the first, that hedit is of gold,
 He smytis soft, and that has esy cure;
 The second was of siluer, mony fold
 Wers than the first, and harder auenture;
 The thrid, of stele, is schot without recure;

¹ MS. Were coplit (*but were can be understood*).

² MS. So.

And on his long[ë] jalow lokkis schene
A chaplet had he all of levis grene.

- 96 And In a retrete lytill of compas,
Depeyntit all *wit* sighis wonder sad,
Noght suich sighis as hertis doith manace,
Bot suich as dooth lufaris to be glad,
Fond I *ven* vpon hir bed, that had
A mantill cast ouer hir schuldris quhite :
Thus clothit was the goddesse of delyte.
- 97 Stude at the dure fair-calling, hir vschere,
That coude his office doon In connyng wise,
And secretee, hir thrifty chamberere,
That besy was In tyme to do *ser*uise,
And othir mo that I can noght on aise ;
And on hir hede, of rede rosis full suete,
A chapellet sche had, fair, fresch, and mete.
- 98 *Wit* quaking hert astonate of that sight,
Vnnethis wist I quhat that I suld seyne ;
Bot at the last[ë] febily as I myght,
Wit my handis on bothe my kneis tueyne,
There I begouth my caris to compleyne ;
Wit ane humble and lamentable chere
Thus salute I that goddesse bryght and clere :
- 99 “ **H** YE quene of lufe ! sterre of beneuolence !
Pitouse princes, and planet *mer*ciabill !
Appesare of malice and violence !
By vertew pure of your aspectis hable,
Vnto your grace lat now beñ acceptable
My pure request, that can no forthir gone
To seken help, bot vnto your allone !

- 100 As *ȝe* that bene the socoure and suete well
 Off remedye, of carefull hertes cure,
 And, in the hugē weltering wawis fell
 Off lufis rage, blisfull havin and sure;
 O anker and keye of ourē gude auenture,
ȝe haue *ȝour* man *with* his gude will conquest:
 Merci, therefore, and bring his hert to rest!
- 101 *ȝe* know the cause of all my peynes smert
 Bet than my-self, and all myn auenture
ȝe may conuoye, and as *ȝow* list, conuert
 The hardest hert that formyt hath nature:
 Sen in *ȝour* handis all hale lyith my cure,
 Haue pitee now, o bryght blisfull goddessē,
 Off *ȝour* purē man, and rew on his distresse!
- 102 And though I was vnto *ȝour* lawis' strange,
 By ignorance, and noght by felonye,
 And that *ȝour* grace now likit hath to change
 My hert, to seruen *ȝow* perpetualye,
 Forgeue all this, and shapith remedye
 To sauen me of *ȝour* benignē grace,
 Or do me steruen furth-*with* in this place.
- 103 And *with* the stremes of *ȝour* Percyng lyght
 Conuoy my hert, that is so wo begone,
 Ageyne vnto that suetē hevinly sight,
 That I, *with*in the wallis cald as stone,
 So suetly saw on morow walk and gone,
 Law in the gardyn, ryght tofore myn eye:
 Now, merci, quene! and do me noght to deye."
- 104 Thir wordis said, my spirit in dispaire,
 A quhile I stynt, abiding efter grace:
 And there-*with*-all hir cristall eyē faire

Sche¹ kest asyde, and efter that a space,
 Benignely sche turnyt has hir face
 Towardis me full plesantly conueide;
 And vnto me ryght in this wise sche seide :

105 "Ȝong man, the cause of all thyne Inward sorowe
 Is noght vnknawin to my deite,
 And thy request, bothe now and eke toforowe,
 Quhen thou first maid professioun to me;
 Sen of my grace I haue inspirit the
 To knawe my lawe, contynew furth, for oft,
 There as I mynt full sore, I smyte² bot soft.

106 Paciently thou tak thyne auenture,
 This will my soñ Cupide, and so will I,
 He can the stroke, to me langis the cure
 Quhen I se tyme, and therefor humily³
 Abyde, and serue, and lat gude hope the gye :
 Bot, for I haue thy forhede here present,
 I will the schewe the more of myn entent.

107 This Is to say, though It to me pertene
 In lufis lawe the septr to gouerne,
 That the effectis of my bemes schene
 Has thaire aspectis by ordynance eterne,
 With otheris bynd and mynes to discerne,⁴
 Quhilum in thingis bothe to cum and gone,
 That langis noght to me, to writh allone ;

108 As in thyne awin case now may thou se,
 For-quhy lo, that [by] otheris Influence
 Thy persone standis noght In libertee ;
 Quharefore, though I geve the beneuolence,
 It standis noght ȝit In myn aduertence,

¹ MS. Me.

² Full is written after smyte, but is crossed through.

³ MS. huily.

⁴ Corrupt; see the note.

Till *cartheyne coursis* endit be and ronne,
 Quhill of trew *seruis* thow have hir graice I-wone.

109 And jit, considering the nakitnesse
 Bothe of thy wit, thy *persone*, and thy *myght*,
 It is no mach, of thyne vnworthynesse
 To hir hie birth, estate, and beautee *bryght* :
 Als like ze bene, as day is to the *nyght* ;
 Or sek-cloth is vnto fyne cremesye ;
 Or doken¹ to the fresche dayesye.

110 Vnlike the mone Is to the sonnē schene ;
 Eke Ianuarye is [vn]like to² may ;
 Vnlike the cuckow to the phylomene ;
 Thaire tabartis ar *noght* bothe maid of array ;³
 Vnlike the crow is to the papē-Iay ;
 Vnlike, In goldsmythis werk, a fischis eye
 To peire⁴ *wit* perll, or maked be so heye.

111 As I haue said, [now] vnto me belangith
 Specialy the cure of thy seknesse ;
 Bot now thy *mater* so in balance hangith,
 That It requerith, to thy *sekernes*,
 The help of othir mo that⁵ bene goddes,
 And haue In thame the menes and the lore,
 In this *mater* to schorten *wit* thy sore.

112 And for thou sall se wele that I entend,
 Vn-to thy help, thy weelfare to *preserue*,
 The streight[ē] weye thy spirit will I send
 To the goddesse that clepit is Mynerue,
 And se that thou hir hestis wele *conserue*,

¹ MS. doken, *with foule on written above it.*

² MS. vnto.

³ *Perhaps we should omit maid.*

⁴ MS. *purerese* ; *wrongly.*

⁵ MS. than.

For in this case sche may be thy supplye,
And put thy hert in rest, als wele as I.

- 113 Bot, for the way is vncouth vnto the,
There as hir duelling is and hir soierne,
I will that gude hope seruand to the be,
Joure alleris frend, to let[tē] the to murn,
Be thy condyt and gyde till thou returne,
And hir besech, that sche will, in thy nede,
Hir counsele geve to thy welefare and spede.
- 114 And that sche will, as langith hir office,
Be thy gude lady, help and conseiloure,
And to the schewe hir rype and gude auise,
Throw quhich thou may, be process and labour,
Atteyne vnto that glad and goldyn flour,
That thou wald haue so fayn with all thy hart.
And forthir-more, sen thou hir seruand art,
- 115 Quhen thou descendis douñ to ground ageyne,
Say to the men that there bene resident,
How long think thay to stand in my disdeyne,
That in my lawis bene so negligent
From day to day, and list tham noght repent,
Bot breken louse, and walken at thair large?
Is nocht eft none¹ that therzof gevis charge?
- 116 And for," quod sche, "the angir and the smert
Off thair vnkyndenesse dooth me constreyne,
My femynyne and wofull tender hert,
That than I wepe; and, to a token pleyne,
As of my teris cummyth all this reyne,
That 3e se on the ground so fast ybete
Fro day to day, my turment is so grete.

¹ MS. Is non (*corrected to nocht*) eft, *with none above.*

- 117 And quhen I wepe, and stynten othir quhile,
 For pacience *that* is in womanhede,
 Than all my wrath and rancoure I exile;
 And of my cristall *teris* *that* bene schede,
 The hony flouris growen vp and sprede,
 That preyen men, [as] In thaire flouris wise,
 Be trewe of lufe, and worschip my *seruise*.
- 118 And eke, In takin of this pitouse tale,
 Quhen so my *teris* dropen on the ground,
 In thaire nature the lytill birdis smale
 Styntith thaire song, and *murny*th for that stound,
 And all the lightis In the hevin round
 Off my greuance haue suich compaciencie,
 That from the ground they hiden thaire *presence*.
- 119 And ȝit In tokenyng forthir of this thing,
 Quhen flouris springis, and freschest bene of hewe,
 And *that* the birdis on the twistis sing,
 At thilkē tyme ay *gynnen* folk renewe¹
 That *seruis* vnto loue, as ay is dewe,
 Most *commonly* has ay his obseruance,
 And of thaire sleuth tofore haue repentance.
- 120 Thus maist thou seyne, that *myn* effectis grete,
 Vnto the quhich ȝe aught and maist weye,²
 No lyte offense, to sleuth is [al] forget:
 And therefore In this wis^e to tham seye,
 As I the here haue bid[den], and conueye
 The mater all the better tofore said;
 Thus sall on the my chargē bene Ilaid.
- 121 Say on than, 'quhare Is becum^myn, for schame!
 The songis new, the fresch carolis and dance,
 The lusty lyf, the mony change of game,
- ¹ MS. folk to renewe (*wrongly*). ² For aught and read aughten.

The fresche array, the lusty contenance,
 The besy awayte, the hertly obseruance,
 That quhilum was amongis thame so ryf?
 Bid tham repent in tyme, and mend thaire lyf:

- 122 Or I sall, *wit* my fader old Saturne,
 And *wit* al hale oure hevinly alliance,
 Oure glad aspectis from thame writh and turne,
 That all the world sall waile thaire gouernance.
 Bid thame be tyme that thai haue repentance,
 And [with] thaire hertis hale renew my lawe;
 And I my hand fro beting sall *wit*drawe.

- 123 This is to say, contynew in my *seruise*,
 Worschip my law, and my name magnifye,
 That am *your* hevin and *your* paradise;
 And I *your* confort here sall multiplie,
 And, for *your* meryt here, *perpetualye*
 Ressaue I sall *your* saulis of my grace,
 To lyve *wit* me as goddis In this place.'"

- 124 *Wit* humble thank, and all the reuerence
 That feble wit and *connyng* may atteyne,
 I tuke my leue; and from hir [hy] *presence*,
 Gude hope and I to-gider, bothe tueyne,
 Departit are, and, shortly for to seyne,
 He hath me led [the] redy wayis *ryght*
 Vnto *Mineruis* palace, faire and *bryght*.

- 125 Quhare as I fand, full redy at the gate,
 The maister portare, callit pacience,
 That frely lete vs in, vnquestionate;
 And there we sawe the *perfyte* excellence,
 The said renewe, the state, the reuerence,
 The strenth, the beautee, and the ordour digne
 Off hir court riall, noble and benigne.

- 126 And straught vnto the presence sodeynly
 Off dame Min~~er~~ue, the pacient goddesse,
 Gude hope my gydē led me redily;
 To quhom anoñ, w~~it~~ dredefull humylnesse,
 Off my cummyng the cause I gan expresse,
 And all the processē hole, vnto the end,
 Off ven~~us~~ charge, as likit hir to send.
- 127 Off quhich ryg~~ht~~ thus hir ansuere was in bref:
 “My soñ, I haue wele herd, and vnderstond,
 Be thy reherse, the matere of thy gref,
 And thy request to procure, and to fonde
 Off thy pen~~n~~nance sum confort at my hond,
 Be counsele of thy lady ven~~us~~ clere,
 To be w~~it~~ hir thyne help In this matere.
- 128 Bot in this case thou sall wele knawe and witt,
 Thou may thy hert[ē] ground on suich a wise,
 That thy labourē will be bot lytill quit;
 And thou may set It In [an]othir wise,
 That wil be to the grete worschip and prise,
 And gif thou durst vnto that way enclyne,
 I will the geve my lore and disciplyne.
- 129 Lo, my gude sone, this Is als mich to seyne,
 As, gif thy lufe sett alluterly
 Of nycē lust, thy trauail is in veyne;
 And so the end sall turne of thy folye
 To payne and repentance; lo, wate thou quhy?
 Gif the ne list on lufe thy vertew set,
 Vertu sall be the cause of thy forfet.
- 130 Tak him before In all thy gouernance,
 That in his hand the stere has of 3ou all,
 And pray vnto his hyē purueyance,

Thy lufe to gye, and on him traist and call,
 That corner-stone and ground is of the wall,
 That failis noght, and trust, *with*outin drede,
 Vnto thy purpose sone he sall the lede.

- 131 For lo, the werk that first Is foundit sure,
 May better bere a pace and hyare be,
 Than othir wise, and langer sall endure,
 Be monyfold, this may thy resoun see,
 And stronger to defend aduersitee :
 Ground [thou] thy werk, therefore, vpon the stone,
 And thy desire sall forthward *with* the gone.

- 132 Be trewe, and meke, and stedfast in thy thoght,
 And diligent hir *merci* to procure,
 Noght onely in thy word ; for word is noght,
 Bot gif thy werk and all thy besy cure
 Accord thereto ; and vtrid be mesure,
 The place, the houre, the maner, and the wise,
 Gif *mercy* sall admitten thy *seruise*.

- 133 All thing has tyme, thus sais Ecclesiaste ;
 And wele is him that his tyme wel¹ abit :
 Abyde thy time ; for he that can bot haste,
 Can noght of hap, the wise man It writ ;
 And oft gude fortune flourish *with* gude wit :
 Quharefore, gif thou will [ay] be wele fortunyt,
 Lat wisdom ay [vn]to thy will be Iunyt.

- 134 Bot there be mony of so brukill sort,
 That feynis treuth In lufe for a quhile,
 And setten all thaire wittis and disport,
 The sely Innocent woman to begyle,
 And so to wynne thaire lustis *with* a wile ;

¹ MS. wil.

Suich feynit treuth is all bot trechorye,
Vnder the vmbre of hid¹ ypocrisye.

135 For as the foulere quhistlith in his throte
Diuersely, to counterfete the brid,
And feynis mony a suete and strangë note
That in the busk for his desate is hid,
Till sche be fast lokin² his net amyð;
Rygh^t so the fatoure, the false theif, I say,
With suete tresoun oft wynnith thus his pray.

136 Fy on all suich ! fy on thaire doubilnesse !
Fy on thaire lust and bestly appetite !
Thaire wolfis hertis, in lambis liknesse ;
Thaire thoughtis blak, hid vnder wordis quhite ;
Fy on thaire laboure ! fy on thaire delyte !
That feynen outward all to hir honour,
And in thaire hert hir worschip wold deuoure.

137 So hard It is to trusten now on dayes
The warld, It is so double and inconstant,
Off quhich the suth is kid be mony assayes;
More pitee is; for quhich the remanant,
That menen wele, and ar noght variant,
For otheris gilt ar³ suspect of vntreuth,
And hyndrit oft, and treuely that is reuth.

138 Bot gif the hert be groundit ferm and stable
In goddis law, thy purpose to atteyne,
Thy laboure is to me [ful] agreable ;
And my full help, with counsele trew and pleyne,
I will the schewe, and this is the certeyne ;
Opyn thy hert, therefore, and lat me se
Gif thy remede be pertynent to me."

¹ MS. heid (*obscurely written*; see hid in st. 136).

² MS. lok in.

³ MS. and (*copied from the line above*).

139 "Madame," *quod* I, "sen It is *your* plesance
 That I declare the kynd of my loving,
 Treuely and gude, *wit/outin* variance,
 In lufe that floure abuse all othir thing ;
 And wold bene he that to hir worschipping
 Myght ought auaille, be him that starf on rude,
 And nouthir spare for trauaile, lyf, nor gude.

140 And, forthirmore, as touching the nature
 Off my lufing, to worschip or to blame,
 I darre wele say, and there-in me assure,
 For ony gold, that ony wight can name,
 Wald¹ I be he that suld of hir gude fame
 Be blamischere In ony point or wyse,
 For wele nor wo, quhill my lyf may suffice.

141 This Is theeffect trewly of myn entent,
 Touching the suete that smertis me so sore,
 Giff this be faynt, I can It noght repent,
 All though my lyf suld forfait be therefore,
 Blisful princes ! I can seye *you* no more ;
 Bot so desire my wittis dooth compace,
 More Ioy in erth kepe I noght bot *your* grace."

142 "Desire," *quod* sche, "I nyl It noght deny,
 So thou It ground and set in cristin wise ;
 And therefore, soñ, opyn thy hert playnly."
 "Madame," *quod* I, "trew *wit/outin* fantise,
 That day sall neuer be I sall² vp-rise,
 For my delyte to couate the plesance,
 That may hir worschip putten In balance.

143 For oure all thing, lo, this were my gladnesse,
 To sene the freschë beautee of hir face ;

¹ Read Nold.

² MS. sall I neuer (*leaving the line incomplete*).

And gif I ¹ myght deservè, be processe,
 For my grete lufe and treuth, to stond in grace,
 Hir worschip sauf, lo, here the blisfull cace
 That I wold ask, and there[vn]to attend,
 For my most Ioye vnto my lyfis end."

- 144 "Now wele," *quod* sche, "and sen that It is so,
 That In vertew thy lufe is set *with* treuth,
 To helpen the I will be one of tho
 From hen[ne]sforth, and hertly *without* sleuth,
 Off thy distresse and excesse to haue reuth
 That has thy hert; I will [hir] pray full faire,
 That fortune be no more thereto contraire.
- 145 For suth It is, that all *ye* creaturis,
 Quhich vnder vs beneth haue *your* duellyng,
 Ressauen diuersely *your* auenturis,
 Off quhich the cure and principall melling
 Apperit is, *withoutin* repellyng,
 Onely to hir that has the cuttis two
 In hand, bothe of *your* wele and of *your* wo.
- 146 And how so be [it], that sum clerkis trete,
 That all *your* chance causit Is tofore
 Heigh In the hevin, by quhois effectis grete
Ye movit are to wrething lesse or more,
 Quhare ² In the world, thus calling that therefore
 'Fortune,' and so that the diuersitee
 Off thaire wirking suld cause necessitee;
- 147 Bot othir clerkis halden, that the man
 Has In him-self the chose and libertee
 To cause his awin fortune, how or quhan
 That him best lest, and no necessitee
 Was In the hevin at his natiuitee,

¹ MS. It.² Read Thar.

Bot ȝit the thingis happin in *commune*
Efter purpose, so cleping thame 'fortune.'

148 And quhare a *persone* has tofore knawing
 Off It that is to fall[en] *purposely*,
 Lo, fortune is bot wayke in suich a thing,
 Thou may wele wit, and here ensample quhy ;
 To god, that¹ is the first[ē] cause onely
 Off *euery* thing, there may no fortune fall :
 And quhy ? for he foreknawin is of all.

149 And *therefore* thus I say to this sentence ;
 Fortune is most and strangest *euermore*,
 Quhare lest foreknawing or intelligence
 Is in the man ; and, sone, of wit or lore
 Sen thou are wayke and feble, lo, *therefore*,
 The more thou art in *dangere* and *commune*
 With hir, that clerkis clepen so fortune.

150 Bot for the sake, and at the reuerence
 Off *venus* clere, as I the said tofore,
 I haue of thy distresse compaciencie ;
 And in confort and relesche of thy sore,
 The schewit [haue] here *my*n *avise* *therefore* ;
 Pray fortune help, for mich vnlikly thing
 Full oft about sche sodeynly dooth bring.

151 Now go thy way, and haue gude mynde vpon
 Quhat I haue said In way of thy doctryne."
 "I sall, madame," *quod* I² ; and ryght anōn
 I tuke my leve :—als straught as ony lyne,
 With-in a beme, that fro the contree dyvine
 Sche, *percyng* throw the firmament, extendit,
 To ground ageyne my spirit is descendit.

¹ MS. It (*put for yt*).

² MS. he.

- 152 Quhare, In a lusty plane, tuke I my way,
 Endlang a ryuer, plesant to behold,
 Enbroudin all *with* freschë flouris gay,
 Quhare, throu the grauel, bryght as ony gold,
 The cristall water ran so clere and cold,
 That, In myn erë maid contynualy
 A maner souñ, mellit *with* armony ;
- 153 That full of lytill fischis by the brym,
 Now here, now there, *with* bakkis blewe as lede,
 Lap and playit, and In a rout can swym
 So prattily, and dressit tham to sprede
 Thaire curall fynnis, as the ruby rede,
 That In the sonnë on thaire scalis bryght
 As gesserant ay glitterit In my sight :
- 154 And by this Ilkë ryuer-syde alawe
 Ane hyë way [thar] fand I like to bene,
 On quhich, on euery syde, a lóng[ë] rawe
 Off treis saw I, full of leuis grene,
 That full of fruyte delitable were to sene,
 And also, as It come vnto my mind,
 Off bestis sawe I mony diuerse kynd :
- 155 The lyoun king, and his fere lyonesse ;
 The pantere, like vnto the smaragdyne ;
 The lytill squerell, full of besynesse ;
 The slawë ase, the druggare beste of pyne ;
 The nycë ape ; the werely porpapyne ;
 The *percyng* lynx ; the lufare vnicorne,
 That voidis venym *with* his euour horne.
- 156 There sawe I dresse him new out of [his] haunt
 The fery tigere, full of felonye ;
 The dromydare ; the standar oliphant ;

The wyly fox, the wedowis Inemye ;
 The clymbare gayte ; the elk for alblastrye ;
 The herknere bore ; the holsum grey for hortis ;
 The haire also, that oft gooth to the wortis.

- 157 The bugill, draware by his hornis grete ;
 The martrik, sable, the foyne, and mony mo ;
 The chalk-quhite ermyn, tippit as the Iete ;
 The riall hert, the conyng, and the ro ;
 The wolf, that of the murthir noght say[is] "ho !"
 The lesty beuer, and the ravin bare ;
 For chamelot, the camel full of hare ;

- 158 With mony an othir beste diuerse and strange,
 That cummyth noght as now vnto my mynd.
 Bot now to purpose,—straucht furth the range
 I held a way, oure-hailing in my mynd
 From quheñs I come, and quhare that I suld fynd
 Fortune, the goddesse ; vnto quhom In hye
 Gude hope, my gyde, has led me sodeynly ;

- 159 And at the last, behalding thus asyde,
 A round place [y]wallit haue I found ;
 In myddis quhare eftsone I haue [a]spide
 Fortune, the goddesse, hufing on the ground ;
 And ryght before hir fete, of compas round,
 A quhele, on quhich [than] cleuering I sye
 A multitude of folk before myn eye.

- 160 And ane surcote sche werit long that tyde,
 That semyt [vn]to me of diuerse hewis,
 Quhilum thus, quhen sche wald [hir] turn asyde,
 Stude this goddesse of fortune and [of glewis] ;
 A chapellet, with mony fresche anewis.

Sche had vpon her hed ; and *wit* this hong
A mantill on hir schuldris, large and long,

161 That furrit was *wit* ermyn full quhite,
Degoutit *wit* the self In spottis blake :
And quhilum In hir chiere thus a lyte¹
Louring sche was ; and thus sone It wold slake,
And sodeynly a *maner* smylyng make,
And sche were glad ; [for] at one contenance
Sche held noght, bot [was] ay in variance.

162 And vnderneath the quhelē sawe I there
Ane vgly pit, [was] depe as ony helle,
That to behald thereon I quoke for fere ;
Bot o thing herd I, that quho there-In fell
Come no more vp agane, tidingis to telle ;
Off quhich, astonait of that ferefull syght,
I ne wist quhat to done, so was I fricht.

163 Bot for to se the sudayn weltering
Off that Ilk quhele, that sloppare was to hold,
It semyt vnto my wit a strangē² thing,
So mony I sawe that than clymben wold,
And failit foting, and to ground were rold ;
And othir eke, that sat aboue on hye,
Were ouerthrawe In twinklyng of an eye.

164 And on the quhele was lytill void space,
Wele nere oure-straught fro lawē [vn]to hye ;
And they were ware that long[ē] sat In place,
So tolter quhilum did sche It to-wrye ;
There was bot clymbe[n] and ryght downward hye,
And sum were eke that fallyng had [so] sore,
There for to clymbe thair corage was no more.

¹ MS. alyte.

² MS. strong.

165 I sawe also ~~that~~, quhere [as] sum were slungin,
 Be quhirlyng of the quhele, vnto the ground,
 Full sudaynly sche hath [thaim] vp ythrungin,
 And set thame on agane full sauf and sound:
 And ~~euer~~ I sawe a new[ë] swarn̄ abound,
 That [thought] to clymbe vpward vpon the quhele,
 In stede of thame ~~that~~ myght no langer rele.

166 And at the last, In ~~presen~~[c]e of thame all
 That stude about, sche clepit me be name;
 And ~~therewith~~ apon kneis gan I fall
 Full sodaynly hailsing, abaist for schame;
 And, smylyng thus, sche said to me in game;
 "Quhat dois thou here? quho has the hider sent?
 Say on anoñ, and tell me thyñ entent.

167 I se wele, by thy chere and contenance,
 There is sum thing ~~that~~ lyis the on hert,
 It stant noght ~~with~~ the as thou wald, perchance?"
 "Madame," quod I, "for lufe Is all the smert
 That ~~euer~~ I fele, endlang and ouerthwert;
 Help, of ~~your~~ grace, me wofull wrechit wight,
 Sen me to cure ȝe powere haue and myght."

168 "Quhat help," quod sche, "wold thou that I ordeyne,
 To bring[en] the vnto thy hertis desire?"
 "Madame," quod I, "bot that ~~your~~ grace dedeayne,
 Off ~~your~~ grete myght, my wittis to enspire,
 To win the well ~~that~~ slokin may the fyre
 In quhich I birn; a, goddesse fortunate!
 Help now my game, ~~that~~ is in poynt to mate."

169 "Off mate?" quod sche, "o! verray sely wrech,
 I se wele by thy dedely colour pale,
 Thou art to feble of thy-self to streche

Vpon my quhele, to clymbe[n] or to hale
 Withoutin help ; for thou has fundin stale
 This mony day, *wit*houtin werdis wele,
 And wantis now thy veray hertis hele.

170 Wele maistow be a wrechit man [y]callit,
 That wantis the confort suld¹ thy hert[ē] glade ;
 And has all thing within thy hert[ē] stallit,
 That may thy ȝouth oppressen or defade.
 Though thy begynnynge hath bene retrograde,
 Be froward opposyt quhare till aspert,
 Now sall thai turnē, and luke[n] on the dert."

171 And therewith-all vnto the quhele In hye
 Sche hath me led, and bad me lere to clymbe,
 Vpon the quhich I steppit sudaynly.
 "Now hald thy grippis," *quod* sche, "for thy tyme,
 An~~e~~ houre and more It rynn~~e~~s ouer prime ;
 To count the hole, the half is nere away ;
 Spend wele, therefore, the remanant of the day.

172 Ensample," *quod* sche, "tak of this tofore,
 That fro my quhele be rollit as a ball ;
 For the nature of It is euermore,
 After ane hicht, to vale and geue a fall,
 Thus, quhen me likith, vp or douñ to fall.
 Fare wele," *quod* sche, and by the ere me toke
 So earnestly, that therewithall I woke.

173 O besy goste ! ay flikering to and fro,
 That neu~~e~~r art In quiet nor In rest,
 Till thou cum to that place that thou cam fro,
 Quhich is thy first and verray proper nest :
 From day to day so sore here artow drest,

¹ MS. that suld; but that is not wanted.

That *wit* thy flesche ay walking art in trouble,
And sleping eke ; of pyne so has thou double.

174 Couert my-self all this mene I to loke,
Though *that* my spirit vexit was tofore
In sueu[en]yng, alssone as *eu* I woke,
By twenty¹ fold It was In trouble more,
Bethinking me *wit* sighing hert and sore,
That [I] nañ othir thingis bot dremes had,
Nor sekernes, my spirit *wit* to glad.

175 And ther*wit* sone I dressit me to ryse,
Fulild of thog*ht*, pyne, and aduersitee ;
And to my-self I said vpon² this wise ;
A ! *merci*, lord ! quhat will 3e do *wit* me ?
Quhat lyf is this ? quhare hath my spirit be ?³
Is this of my forethog*ht* Impressioun,
Or Is It from the hevin a visioun ?

176 And gif 3e goddis, of 3oure puruiance,
Haue schewit this for my reconforting,
In relesche of my furiose peynance,
I 3ow beseke full humily of this thing,
That of 3oure grace I myg*ht* haue more takenyng,
Gif It sal be as in my slepe before
3e shewit haue : and forth, *wit*houtin more,

177 In hye vnto the wyndow gan I walk,
Moving within my spirit of this sight,
Quhare sodeynly a turtur*e*, quhite as c[h]alk,
So evinly vpon my hand gan lyg*ht*,
And vnto me sche turnyt hir full ryg*ht*,

¹ MS. xxtj.

² MS. In.

³ This line and the preceding are transposed in the MS.; but they are marked a and b respectively.

Off quham the chere in hir birdis aport
Gave me In hert[ë] kalendis of confort.

178 This¹ fair[ë] bird ryg^{ht} In hir bill gañ hold
Of red Iorofflis with thair stalkis grene
A fair[ë] branche, quhare writtin was with gold,
On euery list, with² branchis bryg^{ht} and schene
In compas fair, full plesandy to sene,
A plane sentence, quhich, as I cañ deuisse
And haue In mynd, said ryg^{ht} [vp]oñ this wise.

179 "Awak ! awake ! I bring, lufar, I bring
The newis glad, that blisfull beñ and sure
Of thy confort ; now lauch, and play, and syng,
That art besid so glad añ auenture ;
For In the hevyn decretit is the cure ;"
And vnto me the flouris fair present:
With wyngis spred, hir wayis furth sche went.

180 Quhilk vp a-noñ I tuke, and as I gesse,
Añe hundreth tymes, or I forthir went,
I haue It red, with hert[ë]full glaidnese ;
And, half with hope, and half ~~wit~~ dred, It hent,
And at my beddis hed, with gud entent,
I haue It fair[ë] py^{nnit} vp, and this
First takyñ was of all my help and blisse.

181 The quhich[ë] treuly efter, day be day,
That all my wittis maistrit had tofore,
From³ hen[ne]sferth the paynis did away.
And schortly, so wele fortune has hir bore,
To quikin treuly day by day my lore,
To my larges that I am cumin agayñ,
To blisse with hir that is my souirane.

¹ Stanzas 178 (l. 1) to 192 (l. 5) are in a different hand.

² MS. witht.

³ MS. Quhich, *wrongly* ; see st. 69, 144.

- 182 Bot for als moche as sum nicht think or seyne,
 Quhat nedis me, apouñ so litill evyñ,
 To writt all this? I ansuere thus ageyne,—
 Quho that from hell war croppin¹ onys In hevin,
 Wald efter O thank for Ioy mak vj or vij :
 And euery wicht his awin suete or sore
 Has maist In mynde : I can say jou no more.
- 183 Eke quho may In this lyfe haue more plesañce,
 Than cum to largesse from thraldom and peyne,
 And by the mene of luffis Ordinance,
 That has so mony In his goldin cheyne?
 Quhich thinkis² to wyñ his hertis souereyne,
 Quho suld me wite to write thar-of, lat se !
 Now sufficiante Is my felicitee.
- 184 Beseching vnto fair venus abufe,
 For all my brethir that bene In this place,
 This Is to seyne, that seruandis ar to lufe,
 And of his lady can no thank purchase,
 His paine relesch, and sone to stand In grace,
 Boith to his worschip and to his first ese ;
 So that It hir and resouñ noght displese :
- 185 And eke for tham that ar noght entrit Inne
 The dañce of lufe, bot thidder-wart oñ way,
 In gudē tyme and sely to begynne
 Thair prentissched, and forthir-more I pray
 For thame that passit ben the mony affray³
 In lufe, and cummyñ⁴ ar to full plesañce,
 To graunt tham all, lo ! gude perseuerance :
- 186 And eke I pray for all the hertis dull,
 That lyveñ here In sleüth and Ignorance,
 And has no curage at the rose to pull,

¹ MS. coppin, *with r above, after c.*² MS. this.³ This line and the preceding are transposed in the MS.⁴ MS. cunnyng.

Thair lif to mend and thair saulis auance
 With thair suete lore, and bring thañ to gude chance ;
 And quho that will noght for this *prayer* turn,
 Quhen thai wald faynest speid, that thai may spurn.

187 To Rekyñ of euery thing the circumstañce,
 As hapnit me quheñ lesseñ gan my sore
 Of my rancoure and [al my] wofull chañce.
 It war to long, I lat It be tharefor.
 And thus thið floure, I can seye [you] no more,
 So hertly has vnto my help attendit,
 That from the deth hir mañ sche has defendit.

188 And eke the goddis mercifull virking,
 For my long pañe and trewe *seruice* In lufe,
 That has me gevin halely myn asking,
 Quhich has my hert for euir sett abufe
 In perfyte Ioy, that neuir may remufe,
 Bot onely deth : of quhom, In laud and prise,
 With thankfull hert I say richt In this wise :—

189 “Blissit mot be the [heyë] goddis all,
 So fair that glitteren In the firmament !
 And blissit be thare myght celestiall,
 That haue convoyit hale, with one assent,
 My lufe, and to [so] glade a consequent !
 And thankit be fortunys exiltree
 And quhele,¹ that thus so wele has quhirлит me.

190 Thankit mot be, and fair and lufe befall
 The nychtingale, that, with so gud entent,
 Sang thare of lufe the notis suete and small,
 Quhair my fair hertis lady was *present*,
 Hir with to glad, or that sche forthir went !
 And thou gerafloure, mot I-thankit be
 All othir flouris for the lufe of the !

¹ MS. quhile.

- 191 And thankit be the fair[ë] castell wall,
 Quhare as I quhilom lukit furth and lent.
 Thankit mot be the sanctis marciall,
 That me first causit hath this accident.
 Thankit mot be the grenë bewis bent,
 Throu quhom, and vnder, first fortunyt me
 My hertis hele, and my confort to be.
- 192 For to the preseñce suete and delitable,
 Rycht of this floure that full Is of plesañce,
 By processè and by menys fauorable,
 First of the blisfull goddis p~~ru~~ueyañce,
 And syne throu long and trew contyn~~u~~ance
 Of veray faith In lufe and trew ~~ser~~uice,
 I cum a~~m~~, and [jit]¹ forthir In this wisè.
- 193 Vnworthy, lo, bot onely of hir grace,
 In lufis 3ok, that esy is and sure,
 In guerdoun [eke] of all my lufis space,
 Sche hath me tak, hir humble creature.
 And thus befell my blisfull auenture,
 In 3oũth of lufe, that now, from day to day,
 Flourith ay newe, and jit forthir, I say.
- 194 Go litill tretisè, nakit of eloqueñce,
 Causing simplesè and pouertee to wit ;
 And pray the reder to haue pacieñce
 Of thy defaute, and to supporteñ It,
 Of his gudnesè thy brukilnesè to knytt,
 And his tong for to reule[n] and to stere,
 That thy defautis helit may beñ here.
- 195 Allace ! and gif thou cummyst In² presence,
 Quhare-as of blame faynest thou wald be quite,
 To here thy rude and crukit eloquens,

¹ See st. 193, last line.² MS. In the presence.

Quho sal be¹ thare to pray for thy remyt?
 No wicht, bot geve hir merci will admytt
 The for gud will, that Is thy gyd and stere,
 To quham for me thou pitously requere.

196 And thus endith the fatall² Influeñce,
 Causit from hevyñ, quhare powar Is commytt
 Of gouirnañce, by the magnificeñce
 Of him that hiest In the heviñ sitt;
 To quham we thank³ that all oure [lif] hath writt,
 Quho couth⁴ It red, agone syne mony a ȝere,
 'Hich In the hevynnis figure circulere.'

197 Vnto [the] Impnis⁵ of my maisteris dere,
 Gowere and chaucere, that on the steppis satt
 Of rethorike, quhill thai were lyvand here,
 Superlatiue as poetis laureate
 In moralitee and eloqueñce ornate,
 I recommend my buk In lynis sevin,
 And eke thair saulis vn-to the blisse of heviñ. Ameñ.

Explicite, &c. &c.

Quod Iacobus Primus, seotorum rex Illustrissimus.

¹ MS. salbe.

² MS. fotall.

³ MS. think.

⁴ MS. coutht.

⁵ MS. Inpnis; see st. 33, l. 3.

GOOD COUNSEL



GOOD COUNSEL.

(EARLIEST VERSION.)

[From *MS. Camb. Kh.* 1. 5, fol. 5; see *Ratis Raving*, ed. Lumby,
1870, p. 10.]

SEN trew Vertew encressis dignytee,
And wertew floure and rut is of noblay,
Of ony weill, of quhat esstat thow bee,
His steppis sew,¹ and dreid the non affray : 4
Exill all wyce,² and folow treuthe al-way ;
Luf most thi god, that fyrst thi lust began,
And for ilk ynych he wyll the quyte a spane.

[*The second stanza is missing.*]

Sen word is thrall, and thocht is only free,
Thow dant thi twnge, that powar has and³ may. 16
Thow set thine eene⁴ fra worldly vanitee,
Restren thi lust, and harkyne quhat I say.
Stramp or thou slyd, and crep furt^h one the way;
Kep thi behest one-to thi lord, and thane 20
Fore ilk ynych he will the quyt a spane.

¹ So in MS.; misprinted *Ris* steppis few.

² Printed *wyte*.

³ MS. & ; misprinted *so*.

⁴ MS. *erne* (?); printed *orne*, but the first letter is not *o*.

(SECOND VERSION.)

[*From the Bannatyne MS., Edinburgh; fol. 58, back; A.D. 1568.*]

SEN throw vertew inccressis dignitie,
 And vertew is floure and rute of nobill-ray,
 Off ony vertewis estait that evir thow be,
 His steppis persew, and dreid the non effray. 4
 Exyle all vyce, and follow trewith alway;
 Luve most thy God that first thy luve began,
 And for ilk inche he will the quyt a span.

Be not our prowde of thy prosperitie, 8
 For as it cumis, so will it pass away;
 Thy tyme to compt is schort, thow ma weill se,
 For of grene gress sone cumis wallowit hay.
 Labor in trewth, quhill licht is of the day; 12
 Trust most in God, for he best help the can,
 And for ilk inche he will the quyt a span.

Sen wordis are thrall, and thocht is only fre,
 Thow dant thy tung that power hes and may; 16
 Thow steik thyne ene fra warldis vanitie;
 Refrene thy lust; harkin quhat I say;
 Graip or thow slyd, and creip furth on the way,
 And keip thy faith thow aw to God and man, 20
 And for ilk inche he will the quyt a span.

FINIS.

(THIRD VERSION.)

[From "*The Gude and Godlie Ballates*," 1578, repr. 1868, p. 202. Cf. *Dalyell's Scottish Poems of the xvith Cent.*, vol. ii. p. 216.]

SEN throw Vertew inccessis dignitie,
 And vertew is flour and rute of Noblesse ay,
 Of ony wit, or quhat estait thow be,
 His steppis follow, and dreid for none efray: 4
 Eject vice, and follow treuth alway:
 Lufe maist thy God that first thy lufe began,
 And for ilk inche he will the quyte ane span.

Be not our proude in thy prosperitie, 8
 For as it cummis, sa will it pas away;
 The tyme to compt is schort, thow may weill se,
 For of grene gress sone cummis wallowit hay.
 Labour in treuth, quhilk suith is of thy fay; 12
 Traist maist in God, for he best gyde the can,
 And for ilk inche he will the quyte ane span.

Sen word is thrall, and thocht is only fre,
 Thou dant thy toung, that power hes and may, 16
 Thou steik thy ene fra warldis vanitie:
 Refraine thy lust, and harkin quhat I say:
 Graip or thow slyde, and keip furth the hie way,
 Thow hald the fast upon thy God and man, 20
 And for ilk inche he will the quyte ane span.

Quod King James the First.

In Irving's 'Hist. of Scot. Poetry,' 1861, p. 152, a copy of the same poem is printed from 'Ane Compendious Booke of godly and spiritvall Songs, newlie corrected and amended by the first originall Copie': Edinb. 1621, 8vo. It agrees with the above copy word for word, and the variations in spelling are very slight. The chief of these are as follows: Line 1, vertue; 2, flowre, nobles; 3, what estate; 4, steps; 7, thee; 10, well; 11, wallowed; 13, guide; 16, daunt; 17, eene; 18, harken what; 19, keep.

(RESTORED VERSION.)

[Founded upon collation of the preceding.]

SEN throu vertew encreassis dignite,
 And vertew flour and rut is of noblay,
 Of ony weill or quhat estat thou be,
 His steppis sew, and dreid thee non effray: 4
 Exil al vice, and folow trewth alway:
 Luf maist thy God, that first thy luf began,
 And for ilk inch he wil thee quyt a span.

Be not our proud in thy prosperite, 8
 For as it cumis, sa wil it pas away;
 Thy tym to compt is schort, thou may weill se,
 For of green gres soyn cumis walowit hay.
 Labour in trewth, quhill licht is of the day. 12
 Trust maist in God, for he best gyd thee can,
 And for ilk inch he wil thee quyt a span.

Sen word is thrall, and thocht is only fre,
 Thou dant thy tung, that power hes and may; 16
 Thou steik thyn een fra warldis vanite;
 Refrein thy lust, and harkin quhat I say;
 Graip or thou slyd, and creip furth on the way;
 Keip thy behest unto thy God and man, 20
 And for ilk inch he wil thee quyt a span.

NOTES

. THE following Notes are intended to explain peculiarities of construction, and to illustrate some of the allusions and expressions in the Poem. For the explanation of difficult *words*, recourse should be had to the Glossarial Index.

. The references to 'Chaucer' are to the one-volume reprint of Chaucer's Works by Moxon, 1843, 8vo, an edition which contains Tyrwhitt's notes and glossary. In some instances I have rectified the spelling, so as to bring it nearer to the spelling used by the best scribes of the latter part of the fourteenth century.

NOTES.

TITLE. *Quair*, book; mod. E. *quire*. The word is used by Lydgate, in *Envoye to the Black Knight* :—

Go, litel *quair*, unto my liues queen.

For the probable date of the Poem, see the Preface.

1. The first line of this stanza recurs in st. 196. See notes to that stanza.

Twynklyng; apparently a present participle, used as a nominative without a verb. Thus the sense is: *When* the ruddy stars *were* twinkling like fire, high in the circular figure (*i.e.*, dome) of the heavens. Otherwise, it is an error for *twinklen*, pl. of the pres. indicative. On the curious grammatical confusions so frequent in this Poem, see the Preface. In scanning the line, remember that *sterres* is dissyllabic; see the discussion of the metre in the Preface.

Aquary, the sign of Aquarius.

Citherea; an error of the scribe for *Cynthia*, *i.e.*, Cynthia, the moon. It was probably written *Cithia*, with a mark of contraction over the former *i*, and was then wrongly expanded. In the notes to st. 19 below, it is shown that the author himself sometimes confuses proper names; but he is not likely to have done so in this case, because we have the form *Synthius*, *i.e.*, Cynthius, applied to the sun in st. 20. Moreover, the scansion requires *Cynthia*; for the line will not scan well as it stands.¹ And see below.

Rynsid hir tressis, rinsed or cleansed her tresses, which resembled golden wire. The curious expression *rinsed* seems to be used with a poetical reference to the water-bearer Aquarius. Golden hair is frequently alluded to by Chaucer. According to him, Virginia's hair was golden—

And Phebus dyed hath hire tresses grete

Like to the stremes of his burned hete; C. T. 11971.

¹ Still *Cithera* occurs in Chaucer; Troil. v. 1018. But then, so also does *Cynthia*; Troil. iv. 1608.

So was Creseide's—

Hir ounded heer, that sonnish was of hewe ;

i.e., her waved hair, of hue like the sun ; Tro. and Cres. iv. 736.

So was Fame's—

Her heer, that oundy was and crisps [crisp]

As burned gold it shoon to se ; Ho. of Fame, iii. 296.

And so was that of the Duchess—

For every heer on her heed . . .

Me thoughte most like gold it was ; Book of the Duch. 855.

Through capricorn, &c. ; heaved her bright horns through Capricorn. The moon had just passed out of Capricorn into Aquarius. The allusion to these 'horns' proves that the poet was thinking rather of the moon (Cynthia) than of Venus (Citherea). He was also doubtless thinking of Chaucer's lines here following :—

The bente Mone with her hornes pale ; Troil. iii. 624.

I saw thin hornes olde eek by that morowe ; id. v. 653.

The fact that Venus exhibits phases was not known till long after James's time, as Tytler well remarks.

Northward should probably be *northeward*, pronounced as a tri-syllable. Otherwise, the line is defective.

Mydnyght, the meridian. A part of the meridian, as marked on an astrolabe, was called 'the north lyne, or elles the lyne of midnyght' ; Chaucer, On the Astrolabe, pt. i. § 4.

2. *Quhen* as may either mean 'When, as' or 'When that' ; as the reader is pleased to take it. Cf. st. 26, l. 1.

New partit, just departed, *i.e.*, just aroused or awaked.

A lyte, a little. Written *alyte* here in the MS., but as two words in stanza 53.

Fell me to mynd, there came to my mind, occurred to me ; lit. it fell to me, to my mind, *me* being the dative case. See st. 10 ; cf. st. 11, last line.

For craft in erth, for (any) skill upon earth, for any earthly reason. It merely means 'by no manner of means.'

As tho, as at that time, on that occasion.

Toke a boke, took up a book. Compare the parallel passage in the opening lines of Chaucer's Book of the Duchess, where Chaucer tells us that he tried 'to drive the night away' by reading.

3. *Boece* ; Boethius, the famous senator of Rome, and author of the favourite book of the middle ages, entitled *De Consolatione Philosophiæ*. King James might have read it in Chaucer's translation,¹ but he implies, in st. 7, that he read it in the Latin original. Several expressions in the King's Quair may be traced to Boethius, or to Chaucer's borrowings from Boethius, as noted below. Irving

¹ See notes to st. 100.

remarks that "Boethius, who flourished during the iron age of Roman literature, has enjoyed a more extensive reputation than most of those who belonged to its age of gold. His book *De Consolatione Philosophiæ* was translated into Anglo-Saxon by King Alfred; it was translated into English by Chaucer, and more recently by Lord Preston, Mr Ridpath, and Mr Duncan. Another version appears to have been executed by a George Douglas: Hume of Godscroft has addressed a poem, 'Ad Georgium Duglasium, traducto Boethio de Consolatione.' See *Lusus Poetici*, p. 62; London, 1605, 4to." For further information, see the Preface to Chaucer's translation of Boethius, as edited by Dr Morris.

Schewing [the] counsele. In many places, I have found myself compelled to insert words which are necessary both to the sense and metre. These are distinguished, as here, by being enclosed within square brackets.

Quhilom, &c.; who was once upon a time the flower of the world.

Foriugit; was condemned by Fortune, for a time, to exile in poverty, (after being degraded) from his (former) high estate. *Foriugit*, i.e., condemned, occurs in Lydgate's Poem of the Black Knight, l. 274, where we find:—

Falsly accused, and of his foon [foes] *foriuged*
Without answer, whil he was absent,
He damned was, &c.

Mätzner gives no instance of its use; but it is precisely the *F. forjuger* (see the Glossary). It should be noted that Tytler unluckily printed the word as *foringit*, a mistake in which every editor has hitherto followed him; and to make the matter worse, this unmeaning and impossible form was admitted, on Tytler's authority, into Jamieson's great Dictionary.

4. *And there to here*; and (in reading the book, I) there (seemed) to hear, &c. The sense is clear, but it is almost impossible to parse the sentence. The poem abounds in similar awkward and incomplete constructions, which the reader must understand as he can.

Set a-werk, set a-work, set to work. Here *a* is for *an*, the same as the prep. *on*. Cf. *a-foot*, *a-sleep*, &c.

In his poetly report, in his poetic relation. The word *his*, which is hardly needed for the sense, is much in the way of the metre, and might advantageously be omitted. It is remarkable that Tytler here prints *poetly* (with a Greek ϕ) with the remark that "this is exactly copied from the MS." I see no real difference between the ϕ in this word and in other places.

Can him to comfort; at first sight, this seems to mean 'knows how to comfort himself.' But *can* is sometimes used as equivalent to *gan*, which our author uses both with *to* (st. 8, l. 2) and without it (st. 10, l. 6); see note to st. 10. Thus it means 'comforted himself.'

5. The construction is vague and unmeaning, though the general

sense is clear. Perhaps *thought* is to be explained as 'though'; but even then we cannot reduce the sentence to true order. The poet had intended to read merely to induce sleep, but soon discovered that his book was worthy of being carefully studied. Hence he says—"Wherefore, though I began with the purpose of borrowing sleep at that time from my book, ere I ceased, (I thought) my best (course) was to look more (closely) upon the writing of this noble man." If this construction be admitted, it would be better to replace the semicolon at the end of the second line by a comma.

6. *Fortune*, &c.; Fortune turned her back to him.

Theire, their, makes no good sense; I propose to read *thir*, i.e., those. See *Thir* in the Glossary.

Aworth he takith, he receives kindly; lit. at its worth. This resembles Chaucer's *receive in gre*, C. T. 4679, 9027.

7. *Rethorikly pykit*, rhetorically chosen (Tytler).

My scole, my skull, my head. Tytler explains it by 'my learning,' i.e., lit. my school. This is very forced; no one speaks of his school, or even of his learning, as being 'too young.'

Leue all Incidence, omit all incidental matter, leave all digressions.

8. *Newe*, newly, freshly. The final *e* denotes the adverb, as in Chaucer's *Clerkes Prol.* l. 3.

Seyne should perhaps be *seyen*; but, in any case, it is here used as if dissyllabic. *To* requires the gerundial form, which frequently ends in *-e*, and always ended in *-ne* in Anglo-Saxon.

Thame translate, change themselves, i.e., be changed.

9. *Totter*, tottering; see the Glossary. It is merely the old form of *totter*, and is still in use even in provincial English, as shown in my Etym. Dict. s. v. *totter*. For a further description of Fortune's wheel, see st. 159, and 163-165. Cf. Chaucer, *Troil.* iii. 617:—

But O Fortune, executrice of *werdis*!

Failyng foting, since they fail (to make good their) footing.

Quhen hir lest rele, when it pleases her to roll the wheel round.

10. *Gan oure-hayle*, recalled, reviewed, reconsidered. *Gan* is commonly a mere auxiliary, like our modern *did*; so that *gan love* would be merely a past tense, meaning no more than 'loved.' *Ouer-hayle* is exactly and curiously retained in the mod. E. *overhaul*, to reconsider, handle again, closely inspect. He recalls his past life.

Ne myght I nat, I could not; a double negative, as is common. For *myght* in the sense of 'could,' see st. 2, l. 5.

11. *For-wakit*, tired out with being awake. The curious use of these past participles should be noticed; it is the common idiom of the period. It would be quite wrong to suppose *forlyin* in the next line (which, by the way, is written in *one* word without any space after the prefix) to be equivalent to the modern *for lyin'*, i.e., *for lying*, on account of lying. The idioms are totally distinct. *Forlyin* accurately represents the A.S. pp. *forligen*, just as *lien* in our Prayer-Book

Version of the Psalms accurately represents the A.S. p.p. *ligen*. I subjoin two instances of the same idiom in Chaucer. We find *Wery forwaked*, weary and tired of being awake; C. T. 5016. *Al horse forshright*, all hoarse, tired of shrieking; Troil. iv. 1147; where it is misprinted *for shrigh*t (as two words) in Moxon's edition. In the Romaunt of the Rose, l. 3336, we find :—

Forwery, *forwandred* as a fole;

i.e., very weary, tired out with wandering about like a fool. And again, in P. Plowman, B. prol. 7, we find :—

I was *wery forwandred*, and wente me to reste.

Compare also the p.p. *for-tirit*, tired out, occurring in st. 30 below. Also *despeired*, filled with despair, in the same; and *for-wepit*, *for-pleynit* in st. 73. *For-walowit* means 'tired out with tumbling from side to side in bed.' See the use of *wallow* in the Romaunt of the Rose, 2562; Chaucer's Legend of Good Women, 1164; Cant. Tales, 6667, 6684. In Chaucer, Troil. i. 699, Pandarus tells Troilus not 'to *wallow* and *wepe*.' Jamieson wrongly explains it by 'greatly withered.'

12. *Lyf*, living person; see the Glossary. This use of the word is common in P. Plowman and in Gower.

Dooth me think, makes me think.

13. *Made a cross*. The form of a cross was often prefixed to writings. The most notable instance is that of the horn-book, or alphabet for teaching children, which began with a cross, called the *Criss-cross*, *i.e.*, Christ's cross; in consequence of which the alphabet itself was termed the *Criss-cross-row*, or simply the *cross-row*, as in Shak. Rich. III., i. 1. 55.

14. *Wepe and waille*, an alliterative phrase; so Chaucer has "*wepe*, and wring, and *waille*;" C. T. 9088. Tytler compares the well-known passage from Pope's Essay on Man (pt. i. l. 77), beginning—"Heav'n from all creatures hides the book of fate."

15. *Stant*, contracted form for *standeth*. So also *abit* for *abideth*; see the Glossary.

Wantis It, lackest that which should rule and guide thee.

Ryght as, just as the ship that sails without a rudder must hasten to dangers upon the rocks, for lack of that which should be her aid. Imitated from Chaucer, Troil. bk. i. l. 416 :—

Al stereles within a bote am I.

16. *By my-self*, with reference to myself, as in st. 70. *As in partye*, as in part, to some extent.

Suffisance, sufficiency, sufficient rank and honour; because he was born the second son of King Robert the Third.

Lakit; the pt. tense is evidently required. It means, nevertheless I lacked the ripeness of reason; because he was very young.

To gouerne with my will, to govern my will with. We now separate *with* from the verb; but in our old authors *with* and the verb are al-

ways close together; see *With* in the Glossary. This curious idiom has puzzled many. Chaucer again uses *stereles*, C. T. 4859; and, not long after, *driving*, id. 5367, 5389.

And how the case, and how the case stood.

17. *The wynd suld blowe*, the wind that should blow. This suppression of the relative is extremely common, and is often puzzling.

18. This stanza and part of the next are obviously imitated from the Proem to the second book of Chaucer's *Troilus* :—

Out of these blake wawes let us saile,
O winde, now the wether ginneth clere;
For in the se the bote hath such travaile,
Of my conning that unnethe I it stere :
This see clepe I the tempestous matere
Of depe dispaire, that Troilus was inne;
But now of hope the calendes beginne.
O lady myn, that called art Cleo,
Thou be my speed fro this forth, and my Muse,
To rime wel this book til I haue do; &c.

Chaucer has the word *prolixitee*, C. T. 10719.

19. *Cleo*, *Clio*; he uses the same spelling as occurs in the quotation just above.

Polmye, *Polyhymnia*. Proper names often appear in strange forms in our old writers. The parallel passage is in st. 3 of Chaucer's *Annelida* and *Arcite*.

Be fauorable eek thou, *Polimnia*,
On Pernaso that hast thy sisters glade.

Thesiphone, *Tisiphone*. Our author was doubtless misled by Chaucer, who invokes *Tisiphone* in the very first stanza of his *Troilus*, thus :—

Thou Thesiphone, thou help me for tendite
These woful vers, that wepen as I write.

Chaucer knew very well that *Tisiphone* was one of the furies; for he invokes "Megera, Alecto, and eek *Tesiphonee*" in the Proem to his *Troilus*, book iv. But King James does not seem to have remembered this, and doubtless assumed that Chaucer, in beginning his *Troilus*, must have invoked a Muse. The blunder is not one made by the scribe, as Tytler supposes, but by the author. Hence the critics are wrong in proposing to read *Terpsichore*; and most of all is Chalmers to blame, who coolly substitutes *Terpsichore* in the text itself, without a word of comment, or *any hint as to the MS. reading!* It need not be added that Chalmers's edition is, by a long way, the worst of all.

In noumer ix, nine in number. Compare Chaucer, *Troil.* iii. 1810—

Ye sustren nine eek, that by Helicone,
In hill Pernaso, listen for tabide.

In this processe; guide my wayward wits in this undertaking.

20. *In vere*, in spring. The poets are very fond of this form of beginning. Compare the beginning of Chaucer's Prologue.

Synthius, Cynthius, the sun.

A morow, in the morning.

Upward his course; to drive his course upward in the sign of Aries. By *upward* is meant Northward. The path of the sun crosses the equatorial line at the vernal equinox, and then proceeds northward, passing through the sign of Aries first. In Chaucer's time, as shown by his treatise On the Astrolabe, the vernal equinox was on the 12th of March. Consequently, King James is speaking of that day or of some day nearly succeeding it. Compare notes to st. 191.

In ariete, in Aries. We have here the Latin phrase, the prep. *in* being followed by the ablative case. But *Ariete* was also used for the accus. *Arietem*, and hence as a general form for *Aries*. This appears by the following phrase—viz., "out of this *Ariete*," Chaucer, Troil. iv. 1592; and again, id. v. 1190.

21. *Four greis evin*, four degrees exactly, just four degrees. In the Squieres Tale, Part ii., Chaucer speaks of the sun being advanced four degrees in the Ram, and being also four degrees above the horizon. In the latter case, as also in our text, four degrees are equivalent to an hour. Our author is therefore speaking of an hour past mid-day, *i.e.*, one o'clock P.M.

Off lenth and brede . . . bryght, bright in their length and in their breadth, *i.e.*, wholly bright.

22. *Noght fer*; not far past the state of Innocence, but nearly about the number of three years (past it). The state of Innocence certainly means the age from birth to *seven* years, which was the period of infancy; the next age being that of childhood, from seven years to fourteen.

Thus at vij 3eer age childhood bigynnes

And folowith folies many-foold;

Aftirward his childhode blynnnes,

Whan he is fourtene 3eer olde.

The Mirror of the Period of Man's Life.

See Hymns to the Virgin, ed. Furnivall, p. 60. See also Ratis Raving, ed. Lumby, p. 57, where the first age ends at three years, and the second at *seven*.

Tytlar, without assigning any reason, pitched upon *nine* years as the age here meant, which, added to three, gives *twelve*, and contradicts the facts. By adding three to seven we get *ten*; and, as James was born in July 1394, we are thus brought to the year 1404; and it was on the 12th of April 1405, that he was taken prisoner by the English off Flamborough Head. The correction of Tytlar's calculation was first made in Irving's Hist. of Scottish Poetry, which may well be consulted.

Were It causit, whether it were caused. The phrase *tak his aventure* occurs in Chaucer, C. T. 1188; cf. his Complaint of Mars, st. 3.

23. *Purwait of*, provided with all that was necessary for us. King

Robert, his father, determined to send him to France; but the ship was taken by the English, according to James's own account in st. 24, and the prince was confined as a prisoner in the Tower of London. "In 1407 he was removed to the castle of Nottingham; in 1413 we again find him in his former prison; and during the same year he was conducted to the castle of Windsor" (Irving).

Vp airly by the morowe, up early in the morning; cf. Chaucer, C. T. 16965. Chaucer has: *no longer wold he tary*; id. 12785.

The tyme I tald to-forowe, at the time, or date, which I told you before. This alludes to st. 20, where, as has been shown, he alludes to the 12th of March. As he was taken prisoner on the 12th of April, he is here referring to the time of his embarkation. How the month's interval can be accounted for is not clear. But some time was lost by the prince's temporary sojourn in the castle on the Bass Rock.

With mony fare wele; with many a farewell and many an exclamation of 'St John be your protection' from companion and friend.

Sanct Iohne to borowe, lit. 'St John for a protection,' or, 'for a protector.' *Borowe* is the dat. case of the sb. *borow*, a pledge, surety, not a verb. But of course the sense is equivalent to 'may St John protect you.' This was a favourite phrase as a farewell wish. Thus in Chaucer, Complaint of Mars, st. 2, we find:—

Taketþ your leue; and, *with saint John to borowe*, &c.

And again, in the Cant. Tales, l. 10909:—

And toke him by the hond, *saint John to borowe*.

Irving, in his Hist. of Scot. Poetry, has a note on the phrase, showing that it occurs also in Blind Harry's Wallace, p. 224; Colkelbie's Sow, v. 648; Henryson's Fables, Edinb. 1621, p. 19; and Lindsay's Works, vol. i. p. 242.

Off falowe and frende, i.e., from companion and friend.

24. *Weltering*, (while we were) tossing about. Here again we have a present participle used instead of a verb.

Maugre, in spite of our wills. The poet adds—'to speak plainly, whether we would or not'; thus explaining the expression.

Off Inymyis, by enemies—viz., by the English.

Fortune It schupe, fortune provided that it should not be otherwise.

25. *Quhare as*, where that.

The second sistere, the second of the three sisters (Fates) has taken heed to twine the unfortunate thread of my life. *Lukit* means lit. looked, hence, taken heed, given attention. The second sister, or Fate, was Lachesis, who spun out the thread of life; see Ovid, Trist. v. 10. 45; Spenser, F. Q., iv. 2. 48. Chaucer, in his Troilus, bk. v. st. 1, alludes to the "angry Parcas, sustren thre"; and again, in the same, bk. iii. l. 733, exclaims:—

O fatal sustren, which, or any cloth
Me shapen was, my destine me sponne.

Twise nyne; read *twies nine*, twice nine. By adding 18 to 10, we find that the poet is now speaking of himself at the age of 28. And again, by adding 18 to 1405, the year of his captivity, we obtain 1423; or, by adding 28 to 1394, the year of his birth, we obtain 1422; the slight discrepancy being due to a want of precise exactness as to the month intended. We can, however, settle this matter; for in st. 20, he is alluding to March 1405; and in stanzas 34, 49, and 65, he expressly mentions the month of May. This shows that the exact time here meant is May 1423; and we may further conclude that his Quair was written very soon afterwards, probably in May and June of the same year. This suits exactly with the date of his marriage, which took place on the 2d of February 1424.

Till Iupiter, till Jupiter was pleased to direct his mercy (towards me), and to send me comfort, by relaxing my sorrow.

26. *Quhare as*, where that, in my prison.

Quhat haue I gilt, in what have I offended, what sin have I committed? *Gilt* is the pp.

27. *Lakkith*, lack. This is a very curious instance of confusion of grammar; and it is hard to say whether it is due to the scribe, or to the poet's inexact imitation of Southern grammar. The form *lakkis* is equally suitable, in Northern English, for the *first* or for the *third* person; but *lakkith* in Southern English can only represent the *third* person. Here we have *lakkith* put for *lakkis*, and used with the first personal pronoun. The sense is 'and I lack.' See notes to st. 117, where a similar error is noted.

My folk I wold argewe, I would reason with my attendants. The chief of these was his tutor, Henry St Clair, Earl of Orkney; see Irving and Tytler.

28. *Me more comprisit*, included me rather than others. Tytler reads *more me comprisit*; but makes no comment on the fact that the word *me* has to be supplied; for it is not in the MS. Compare the first line of the stanza.

I suffer allone among the figuris nyne, I alone suffer, among all the nine figures or numbers; or, as Tytler says, "of all the nine numbers, mine is the most unlucky or wretched." But neither he, nor any other editor, has made any attempt to explain the poet's meaning, nor do they make any comment on the two lines following. The clue is to be found in the fact that the poet is comparing himself to a cipher or O, which, though not strictly one of the *nine* Arabic numerals, is used conjointly with them. The peculiarity of the cipher is that it is of no use or value when standing *by itself*, but it has need of some one of the other figures before it can be rendered significant. When this idea is once caught, the passage is transparently clear. "I suffer when alone, being like a cipher amongst the other nine figures; I am like a wretched creature that can do no good to another (being intrinsically insignificant); and yet, on the other hand, I have

need of every person's (*i.e.*, figure's) help to support me and make me of value." The phrase "like a cipher in augrim," *i.e.*, like a cipher in arithmetic, seems to have been a proverbial expression for a worthless person. It is introduced, with a keenly satirical effect, in Richard the Redeles, iv. 53, where the author compares certain members of Parliament to a "siphre in awgrym, that noteth a place, and no-thing availith," *i.e.*, a cipher in arithmetic, which merely fills up a place, but is of no intrinsic value. So also in Crowley's 'Select Works,' ed. J. M. Cowper, p. 73:—

And at the last thou shalt be founde
To occupye a place only
As do in A[u]l[g]rime ziphres rounde; &c.

Chaucer speaks of the "figures ten"; Book of the Duchess, l. 437.

29. For *quhich*, on which account, in order to seek for comfort as a remedy for my distress.

By the come I, by thee I came. *Thee* refers to *exercise* or habit; and *come* is the past tense.

30. The description here given is a palpable imitation of Chaucer's *Knights Tale*, where it is recorded how Palamon and Arcite, being in prison, first saw Emelie walking in the garden. The first line of the stanza is borrowed exactly, with the mere change of *his* to *my*, from Chaucer, *Troil.* bk. i. l. 547, where it is spoken of Troilus.

31. Compare Chaucer, *C. T.* 1058:—

The grete tour, that was so thikke and strong . . .
Was euen Ioinaunt to the garden-wall,
Ther as this Emelye had hire pleyng.

But the poet had also here some remembrance of Chaucer's *Assembly of Foules*, where there is a description of "a garden . . . full of blossomed bowis," with "trees clad with leues," &c. This is made certain by the closer imitation of the same passage in stanzas 152, 153.

Herbere, a place for growing shrubs and trees; from O. F. *herbere*, Lat. *herbarium*. By the description here given, we find that it contained alleys, was railed round, and was set round with trees and hawthorn-hedges. In the next stanza, the same word *herbere* is used to denote the smaller beds into which the *herbarium* was subdivided; each bed containing juniper-trees, so closely placed to one another that, to a person who only saw the garden from a distance, the trees seemed almost to fill up the beds. Observe also the use of *lyf* for 'person' both in st. 31 and st. 32. Chaucer mentions *An herber grene*; *Troil.* ii. 1705. The place described is the royal garden at Windsor.

33. Here again we see some imitation of Chaucer's *Assembly of Foules*, l. 190:—

On euery bough the birdes herde I singe.

And in l. 684 of the same, we find:—

Thus singen smale foules for thy sake,

i.e., for the sake of St Valentine, or the pairing season.

Again, in Chaucer's Troil. bk. ii. l. 918:—

A nightingale upon a cedre grene . . .
Full loude song ayen the mone shene,
Paraunture, in his birdes wise, a lay
Of loue, &c.

But the whole of stanzas 33 and 34 are clearly founded upon the stanzas last but two and last but one of the Assembly of Foules, which contain such lines as these:—

But first were chosen foules for to singe . . .
To do Nature honour and plesaunce;
The note, I trowe, makid was in Fraunce,
The wordes were such as ye may here fynde
The nexte vers, as I now haue in mynde:
Qui bien ayme, tard oublie.
'Now welcome somer, with thy sunnes softe
That hast this winter wethers ouershake:
Saint Valentine, thou art ful high on-lofte,
Which driuest away the longe nightes blake;
Thus singen smale foules for thy sake,
Wel haue they cause for to gladden ofte,
Sens eche of hem recouered hath his make; &c.

Rong, rung entirely with their song. Hence we should probably read *of* for *on* before the *copill*, and explain it by—'and with the couple (*i.e.*, verse or stanza) next following, containing their sweet harmony; and behold, here is the text of it.'

34. *Worschippe*, a trisyllabic form. Probably the poet used Chaucer's usual form *worschippeth*; the termination *-eth* being that of the imperative plural in the Southern dialect.

The kalendis, the calends are begun. The birds are here described as welcoming the calends or first days of bliss. So also, in st. 177, the author speaks of the *kalendis of confort*. This expression is imitated from Chaucer, who speaks of the *kalendes of hope*, Troil. ii. 7, and of the *kalends of eschaunge*, id. v. 1646. In the first line, lovers are exhorted to pay respect to May, with reference to the usual poetical invocation of the springtime of love; and it is even possible that *kalendis* may be meant in the literal sense, with reference to the *first* of that month, and the rejoicings commonly connected with it. May is mentioned again in stanzas 49 and 65.

Hevynnis wonne, won your heavens, *i.e.*, your states of bliss. It is synonymous with *makis wonne*, won their mates, in the next stanza.

Thank lufe, thank Love, who is pleased to call you to his mercy.

36. *Lyf*, mode of life; not 'person,' as elsewhere.

37. *Eft*, again. The idea is more or less copied from Chaucer, C. T. 1171, &c. :—

A man most nedes loue, maugre his heed.

Compare also 'the Song of Troilus,' in Chaucer, Troil. bk. i.

38. Cf. Who hath thee *doon offence*? Ch. C. T. 1085.

40. Imitated from Chaucer, C. T. 1079 :—

He cast his eyen vpon Emilia ;

Also from l. 1063 :—

Ther as Emilia had hire pleying;

And from ll. 1037-9 :—

That Emelie, that fayrer was to sene
Than is the lillie vpon hire stalke grene,
And fressher than the May with floures newe.

And further, compare ll. 1080, 1081 :—

And therwithal he blente, and cried a !
As though he stongen were vnto the herte.

Pleyne is for *pleyn*, i.e., play, amuse herself. It is Chaucer's very word, and Tytler is quite wrong in supposing it to mean 'complain' in this passage; though of course it often bears that meaning. In Chaucer's Troil. ii. 812, it is said of Cressid :—

She rist her up, and wente her for to pleye;

And, five lines below, *To pleyen*.

41. *For-guhy*, because, since.

Of free wyll, of my own free will; for there was no token (or sign) of menace (or threatening) in her sweet face.

42. The last two lines are due to Chaucer, C. T. 1103 :—

I not wher [*know not whether*] she be womman or goddesse.

And again, in Chaucer, Troil. i. 425 :—

But whether goddesse or womman, iwis,
She be, I not [*know not*].

43. *Nature the goddesse*. Chaucer, in his Assembly of Foules, introduces Nature as a goddess, and assigns her a garden; l. 302 :—

And in a launde, vpon an hille of floures,
Was set this noble goddesse Nature.

Minister. This is obviously the word meant, though written 'mister' in the MS. A trisyllabic word is required. Tytler wrongly prints *mester*, but suggests 'administer' as the sense of it.

E. Thomson (p. xiii.) notes another instance where the word *minister* is written as 'mister' in a MS.—viz., in the Acts of James I. 1432, c. 4, where we find: 'Jugis sal mister the law.'

44. *I may It noght astert*, I cannot escape it. Cf. Chaucer, C. T. 1595.

That dooth me sike, that causes me to sigh. Tytler did not understand this, though the construction is common enough.

Quhy lest, why did it please God to make you such as to cause a poor prisoner thus to suffer? One, namely, who entirely loves you, and knows only of wo.

45. *Vnknawin*, it being unknown to me. Such is the literal sense, *unknawin* being a past participle; but the present participle *vnknawing* would be simpler.

I-fallyng, on the other hand, certainly stands for *I-fallen*, fallen, pp. On the confusion between the suffixes *-ing* and *-en* in pieces written by Scottish writers in imitation of Southern English, see my Preface to Lancelot of the Laik, printed for the Early English Text Society; and see notes to st. 164.

Lufis dance, the dance of love. This curious expression occurs in Chaucer, C. T. 478; it is said of the Wife of Bath that she knew "the olde dance" of the art of love. It occurs again in C. T. 12013, and in Troil. bk. iii. l. 696. Tyrwhitt explains it by 'game,' and remarks that the French have the same phrase, citing from Cotgrave (s. v. *Danse*) the expression, 'Elle sçait assez de la vieille danse'; the translation of which is to be found in l. 4300 of the Romaunt of the Rose—'For she knew al the olde daunce.' See also st. 185, l. 2.

46. This description of the lady Joan should be compared with the description of Creseide in Chaucer's Troilus, bk. v. ll. 807-827.

Toward; I can only assign meaning to this passage by supposing that *toward* here means 'in front.' If this be not a legitimate use of the word, there must be something wrong in the text. We can hardly take it to mean 'regarding'; and even if we do, this line will not suit the next.

In fret-wise couchit was, was trimmed or set with a fretwork of pearls. *Couch*, F. *coucher*, is the Lat. *collocare*, and is here used with the sense of arranging or setting in order; hence, of trimming. The expression is copied from Chaucer, C. T. 2163:—

Couched with perles, white, and rounde, and grete.

And again:—

A *fret* of gold she hadde next her heer; Legend of Good Women, 215.

Off plumys. Compare Chaucer, C. T. 1055:—

She gadereth floures, party white and rede,
To make a sotel gerlaund for her heede.

47. *Amoretis*, love-knots, according to Jamieson. The word is borrowed from Le Roman de la Rose, where it occurs twice. The English version of the Romaunt also employs the word, ll. 890 and 4755:—

For not y-clad in silk was he,
But al in floures and flourettes,
I-peinted al with *amorettes*,
And with losenges and scochouns
With birdes, liberdes, and liouns.

And again :—

For also wel wol loue be set
Under ragges as rich rochet ;
And eek as wel by *amorettes*
In mourning blake, as bright burnettes.

In the latter passage Tyrwhitt explains *amorette* by 'an amorous woman,' which seems quite right; Cotgrave quotes the very lines of *le Roman de la Rose* (4437, &c.) which are here cited. But it is obvious that the same explanation will not apply to the other passage, which Tyrwhitt omitted to note or observe; whilst at the same time, this other passage is the very one of which King James was thinking. Cotgrave also assigns to the word the sense of 'love-trick'; but it is clearly here used in the sense of 'love-device' or 'love-ornament.' What was really the *precise shape* of the *amorette*, it would now be hard to say; it can hardly have been precisely a knot or love-knot, as that would be an awkward shape, I fancy, for a spangle. It is perhaps worth adding that, according to Sigart, the Walloon word *amourette* is still used to mean penny-cross, the English name of which is due to 'the resemblance which its seed-vessels in size and shape bear to silver pennies'; Johns, *Flowers of the Field*, 4th ed. p. 40. Perhaps it is meant, accordingly, that the spangles were thin and circular, which is their usual shape.

Floure-Ionettis, flowers of the great St John's wort; see the Glossary. The great St John's wort actually has, as it were, a tuft of stamens in the centre of the flower, which may most aptly be compared to a golden plume; or, conversely, a golden plume may be compared to the tuft. This leaves no doubt as to the flower intended. Tytler supposes that the king "may have dubbed some flower with the name *janetta*, in honour of his mistress, the lady Jane." But the name *jaunette* is a real one, though it is quite possible that it was chosen with a punning reference to *Joan*, which better represents the name of the lady; for it is spelt *Johanne* in the Chronicle of London quoted by Irving.

Round crokettis. These two words are inserted by me, merely to fill up the line; it is obvious that the MS. is wrong in repeating *floure-Ionettis* from the line above. It is very difficult to find words that rime; we have only the choice of *flourettis* (see the quotation from the Romaunt of the Rose just above), or *violettis*, or *crokettis*—unless there be some other word which has escaped me. The poet would hardly compare plumes to flowerets (little flowers) or to violets, just after comparing them to another flower; but the comparison to *croquets* is just conceivable, though not perhaps highly appropriate. A croquet was a sort of curled tuft, and was actually used of a particular kind of ornament for the hair. Sir F. Madden, in his remarks on Havelok the Dane, shews that *Athelstan with the golden croquet* is the name of a lost romance; see Havelok, ed. Skeat, p. vi. note 1. Indeed, the word still survives as a term of architecture. Still, if any critic can make a better guess, by all means let him do so.

48. Compare Chaucer's description of a lady's neck and throat in the Book of the Duchess, ll. 939-947.

Herte is properly a dissyllable in Chaucer.

Now gif, now God knows if there was a good partner (for me to choose). The line just expresses that which we could now only express by the vulgar phrase, that she was indeed 'an eligible party.' But if it be questionable English, it is excellent French. Cotgrave explains *parti* by 'a match, bargain, . . . and hence a husband or wife'; &c.

49. See Chaucer, C. T. 1036, where he describes Emily as going out to walk 'ones, in a morwe of May.'

To suich delyte, to such (an extent of) delight, so delightful. Perhaps *of* were better than *to* here.

50. These lines are a reminiscence of Chaucer, C. T. 4582:—

In hire is heigh beaute, withouten pride,
Youthe, withouten grenehed or folye;
To alle hire werkes vertue is hire gyde; &c.

This is his description of Constance.

51. Cf. Chaucer, C. T. 1161:—

And myn is loue, as to a creature.

Thir versis sevin, these seven verses—i.e., this stanza. See the stanza next following.

52. *Of goddis stellifyit*, made into a star (planet) by the gods. Chaucer talks of Jupiter 'stellifying' Alceste; Legend of Good Women, 525. See also the House of Fame, bk. ii. l. 78.

In suich a wise, in such a manner; I have inserted *a* for the metre.

53. *Bellis*, bells fastened to the dog's collar.

A! wele were him, Ah! well would it be for him.

55. *Proigne*, Progne. Cf. Chaucer, Troil. ii. 64:—

The swalwe Progne, with a sorowful lay
Whan morow com, gan make hire waimenting
Why she forshapen was.

See the whole story related at length in Chaucer's Legend of Philomene, which is the seventh story in his Legend of Good Women, and is taken from the sixth book of Ovid's Metamorphoses. Tereus married Progne; and, after ravishing her sister Philomela, whose tongue he cut out, he assured Progne that Philomela was dead. This tragedy was occasioned by Philomela's desire to see her sister; hence our poet exclaims: 'And eke I pray, for the sake of all the great pains that thou didst once suffer owing to thy love for thy dear sister Progne, at the time when thy breasts were wetted with the tears of thy bright eyes, (and were) all run over (or besmeared) with blood; so that it was a pity to hear,' &c. Progne was turned into a swallow, and Philomela into a nightingale, as is here said. This James may

have borrowed from Gower, Conf. Amantis, bk. v. ed. Pauli, ii. 318:—

So what with blode, and what with teres
Out of hir eyen and hir mouth,
He made hir faire face vncouth.

56. *The treson*, the treacherous deed; as in Ch. C. T. 2003.

Kythit, shewn. He shewed his treason by falsely asserting Philomela's death. We need not take *kythit* in its literal sense of 'made known,' as this would contradict the story.

In the twentydeuil way, lit. in the way of twenty devils. This was an expression of impatience, meaning little more than 'by all possible means.' Chaucer uses it in the form *a twenty deuil wey*, where *a* stands for *an*, i.e., on or in. Examples occur in Cant. Tales, 3713, 4255, and 16250; we also find *a deuil wey*, ll. 3136, 7824. Tytler was so puzzled by this common expression that he supposed *deuil* to represent the F. *deuil*, sorrow! We may remark that it would improve the metre to substitute *a* (as in Chaucer) for *in the*.

57. *Hastow no lest*, hast thou no desire?

Say ones to me 'pepe', say but once to me 'peep!' *Peep* is an imitative word, allied to *pipe*, to express the chirping of a bird.

59. *Wyn gree*, win the victory. Tytler calls this 'a Scottish phrase,' but we find *the gree* for the victory, or the prize, in Chaucer, C. T. 2735; and the phrase, 'The *gree* yit hath he gotten' occurs in P. Plowman, B. xviii. 98.

60. *Cast*, i.e., throw (a stone).

Hald me pes, hold my peace. Tytler substitutes *my* for *me* in the text, without any hint that the MS. reading is *me*.

Do the lewis, make the leaves shake.

61. For *he* in l. 1, it would be better to read *sche*. Here again Tytler inserts *sche* in the text, without any hint that the MS. has *he*. But then he never saw the MS. himself. Compare l. 2 of the next stanza.

Boundin all to fest, bound all too fast, i.e., completely taken captive. Tytler prints *bound in*, and then explains it by 'so were all my wits (or senses) feasted'; thus ignoring *boundin* (or *bound in*) altogether.

62. 'I there made a ditty, addressed to her who was my heart's queen, (adapted) to the notes of the nightingale, which she (the bird) sang.' *Philomene* is from the Low Lat. *philomena*, a substitution for the Lat. *philomela*. For this form, see A. Neckam, De Naturis Rerum, ed. Wright, pp. 102, 390; and see Chaucer's Legend of *Philomene*, where this spelling occurs repeatedly.

63. *Is yit vncouth*, is as yet unknown. Tytler has no stop at the end of l. 4, and Thomson proposes to consider *throu-folow* as one word, which I do not think is admissible, and, after all, gives no sense. The sense of this difficult stanza (unintelligible with the old punctuation) I take to be as follows: "When will your mercy take pity upon your

lover, whose service is as yet unknown to you? Since, when you depart, there is nothing else (for me) then, except (to say): O heart, where that the body cannot (go) through, do thou (at least) follow thy heaven (*i.e.*, thy lady's person)! Who (my heart!) ought to be glad except thou, who hast undertaken to follow such a guide? Even were it through hell, refuse thou not the way."

To *forsake* is to refuse, shrink from.

64. *With a voce*, all with one voice; *a* is emphatic. So also three lines below, *a soyle* means one suit, one livery, one dress.

65. Here again we have an invocation to May, which is here mentioned for the third time; cf. notes to st. 34 and to st. 49.

Bridis, brides, spouses. There is some difficulty here, as we should rather have expected the reading *briddis*, *i.e.*, birds; but this is forbidden by the rime. We must clearly take *bydis* to mean 'bides' or 'abides,' and so cannot read *byddis*, *i.e.*, bids. Still May may be considered as the season of love, and so 'merciful to brides' as well as to birds. Compare the Cant. Tales, ll. 1502, 1503:—

And for to don his observance to May,
Remembring on the point of his desire.

Observe also ll. 1512, 1513:—

O May, with alle thy floures and thy grene,
Right welcome be thou, faire fresche May!

May is the name of the *bride herself* in Chaucer's Marchauntes Tale, to which James explicitly refers in st. 110. And we may compare Milton's Song on May Morning:—

Hail bounteous May, that dost inspire
Mirth, and youth, and warm desire.

66. *Facture*, feature, aspect. The MS. plainly has *facture*, both here and in st. 50; Tytler should not have altered it to *faiture*. Cf. O. F. *facture*, 'the facture, workmanship, framing, or making of a thing'; Cotgrave. The mod. E. *feature* represents Lat. *factura*, just as the O. F. *facture* does.

67. *A lytill thrawe*, a little while.

68. For *guhare-to* I propose to read *guhare-unto*, as it improves the metre, and is somewhat better for the sense.

Of peyne; of pain? surely not; and yet, God knows, it *is* so; for they (such pains) cannot more strongly torment any one. Here *za* means *yea*, *i.e.*, yet it is so. *Thay* agrees with a plural *peynes*, not expressed, but implied in the preceding singular *peyne*.

69. *Thrist*, thirst; misprinted *thirst* by Tytler. The form is common.

Bot venus, unless Venus, of her grace, will provide a remedy, or cause my spirit to pass hence, *i.e.*, cause me to die. He means, I must attain my desire, or die. Tytler explains it quite amiss by 'bring peace to, or calm my spirit.' But the old spelling of 'peace' is not *pace*, but *pees*. Cf. Chaucer, Cant. Tales, 8968:—

No force of deth, ne when my spirit pace.

Again, in l. 10808:—

Myn harm I wol confessen er I pace,

i.e., ere I die.

And again, in Troil. iv. 951:—

To doom him sone out of the world to pace.

70. *Ay but-les*, for ever boot-less, for ever without success. Chaucer alludes to Tantalus; Troil. iii. 593.

Euer ylike, ever in the same way, always unchangingly.

By my-self, with reference to myself, as in st. 16.

71. *God mote hir conuoye*, may God accompany her on her way.

72. *This is to say*, this is as much as to say, the night approached. This humorous touch is precisely copied from Chaucer, C. T. 11329:—

For thORIZONT had reft the sonne his light;

This is as much to seyn, as it was night.

Chaucer has a similar touch of humour in his Troil. ii. 904:—

The dayes honour, and the heuenes eye,

The nightes foo—al this clepe I the sonne.

Esperus, Hesperus, the evening-star. Lydgate applies the term *Esperus* to the planet Venus; Complaint of the Black Knight, l. 612. But, by the epithet *his*, it would seem to be here applied to the planet Jupiter. Both planets have been called 'the evening-star.' Chaucer has the expression *as still as stoon*; C. T. 7997.

73. *For-wepit and for-pleynit*, tired out with weeping and complaining; see note to st. 11.

Oursset so, sorrow had so overset (or overwhelmed) both my heart and mind. For *overset*, we now say *upset*.

Lent, leaned. Tytler alters it to *lenit*, unnecessarily and without authority. *Lened*, leant, occurs in P. Plowman, B. viii. 65; of which *lent* is a shorter form. And see st. 74, l. 2; st. 191, l. 2.

Suoun, in a swoon. But it is really quite right; for *swoon* was orig. a pp., A.S. *swógen*. See *swoon* in my Etym. Dictionary.

Met, dreamt. *Deuise 3ou*, tell you.

74. *Of my sight*, the power of my sight became wholly blind. Or we might take *Iblent* actively, the nom. *it* being understood; 'the light wholly blinded the power of my sight.' The former seems to be here intended; Chaucer has *blente*, blinded, in Troil. v. 1194.

75. *Nas nothing*, there was not anything against me, *i.e.*, to oppose my way. *Nas* is commonly used for *ne was*, was not. Tytler prints *was*, against the MS. reading.

Clippit, embraced. Compare the account in Chaucer's House of Fame, bk. i., where the poet describes his being carried through the air by an eagle.

76. *Spere*, sphere. The ancients supposed there were nine spheres, or as Chaucer calls them *nine speris*; Assembly of Foules, l. 59. See my edition of Chaucer's Astrolabie. They also supposed that the

earth, the centre of all things, was surrounded by air, outside of which was a sphere (or shell) of water, and again a sphere of fire. Hence the poet ascends, successively, through air, water, and fire, till he comes to *Signifer*, or the 'sign-bearing' zodiac, containing the twelve signs. Finally, he arrives in the planet Venus. In the sixth line, I have supplied *quhar* (where) as being no less requisite for the sense than the metre. Chaucer has the word *Signifer*; Troil. v. 1020. A long description of the elements, spheres, and signs is given by Gower; Conf. Amantis, bk. vii.

77. *Quhen as*, when that; a common phrase. I have supplied *as*, for the metre. Cf. *there as*, where that, in st. 86.

As quho sais, lit. as who says; as if one should say.

At a thocht, at a thought, as quick as one can think.

Grete repaire, a great resort, *i.e.*, a great concourse. Tytler observes that he takes the expressions *as quho sais at a thocht* and *of peple grete repaire* to be both Scottish. I do not see any reason for this. Chaucer has the following, in Troil. iii. 267:—

For wel thou wost, the name as yet of her
Amonges the peple, *as who saith*, halowed is.

And again, in the Book of the Duchess, l. 559:—

As who saith, nay, that nil not be.

And again, in his tr. of Boethius, bk. iii. pr. 4, ed. Morris, l. 2046: '*as who seith*, none.'

Chaucer also uses *repaire* in the very sense of great resort, or concourse of people; C. T. 6806.

78. *Endit had*, had ended. The word *had*, here supplied, greatly improves both the sense and metre. *Endit had* occurs elsewhere, just above—viz., in st. 72, l. 2.

Chancis, adventures, histories.

Diuerse bukis, various books. Tytler supposes that the poet had 'the celebrated *Tablature of Cebes* in his view, although his groupes of figures are different.' It is much more likely that he was thinking of the stories in Ovid, and of Chaucer's allusion to them in the Man of Law's Prologue, which see. Compare also Chaucer's Legend of Good Women, and the description of lovers in Gower, Conf. Amantis, bk. viii. ed. Pauli, iii. 359.

79. *Martris and confessoris*, martyrs and confessors for love, just as the saints were such for Christ. This is quite in the medieval tone. Chaucer actually calls the Legend of Good Women his '*seintes legende of Cupide*'; C. T. 4481.

His make in his hand, *i.e.*, holding his mate by the hand.

Solempnit, rendered solemn. The MS. has *solempt*, an impossible form, and too short by a syllable. Or we may read *solempne*, if we keep its trisyllabic form, as in Chaucer, C. T. 10425:—

My liegë lord, on this solempnë day.

After as lufe, according as Love is pleased to advance them.

80. *Off gude folkis*, some good folks. *That faire In lufe befill*, to whom it happened favourably in love. *That* is really a dat. plural here.

By thame one, by themselves; a common idiom. Tytler actually seems to have taken *one* to mean an individual; for he explains it by 'Prudence with his hoary head,' evolving *Prudence* out of his own consciousness, as being a likely person to have a hoary head. But *hedis* is plural, and not even Prudence has more heads than one, as E. Thomson pertinently remarks. See st. 83, l. 4.

I subjoin a list of the various groups of lovers whom the poet mentions:—

1. Lovers with hoary heads; near them stood Good-will (st. 80).
2. Next them were young lovers, amongst whom was Courage (st. 80).
3. A group in wide capes, with hoods hanging over their eyes; amongst them stood Repentance (81).
4. Behind a traverse or thin screen stood 'a world of folk,' with discontented looks, holding in their hands *bills* or petitions containing their complaints (82).

In the stanzas next following, further explanatory remarks are made concerning these groups; hence we learn that the *first* group included the true lovers, constant even in their old age, and all who were true to Venus, both warriors and poets (83-85). The *second* group included the lovers who died young, from various causes (86, 87). The *third*, 'men of religion,' who hid their conduct from the world, but served Love in secret (88, 89). The *fourth* group consisted of the young folks who were not permitted to pursue their love, but were shut up by their friends in a cloister (90); or else they were married to those whom they could not love (91, 92); or died very shortly after being married happily (93).

82. *Trevesse*, a traverse, or transparent curtain; better spelt *traverse* in st. 90, where it is called 'a traverse of delight,' *i.e.*, delightful to look upon. The third line of the stanza is imperfect; we seem to require the form *y-standing*.

84. *Of lufis craft the cure*; this is put in apposition with *exercise*, so that it means 'the exercise which is the cure of the craft of love,' *i.e.*, love-play or dalliance.

85. *Faucht*, who fought; the relative being omitted.

Mynd, memory, remembrance. Ovid's poems were probably better known in the middle ages than those of any other writer. Homer is not often mentioned, because the tale of Troy was learnt from Guido de Colonna's version. Still Chaucer's House of Fame contained

the grete Omer,
And with him Dares and Titus
Before, and eek he Lollius,
And Guido eek de Columpnis.

86. *Wanting*, lacking; not because they wanted or desired their mates, but because they could not get them.

87. *All day*, continually; see Chaucer, C. T. 1526.

Surmounting, aspiring above their rank.

89. *Halfdel cowardy*, in a half measure, cowardice. The MS. has merely *half*, but *halfdel* is the right phrase, and though composed of *half* and *del* (deal, part), is often written as one word.

90. *Take*, taken. *Nothing thay to wyte*, they (being) in no respect to blame.

Recounsilit, reconciled, *i.e.*, to their mates or lovers; restored to them.

On thame to pleyne, to complain against them.

91. *For he*, because he. For *gruch*, Sibbald actually substitutes the unmeaning word *bruckt*. For *quhich*, on which account.

92. *Coplit*, coupled with others that could not agree (with them).

Departing, separating those that would never have disagreed.

Fro thair chose dryve, driven from their choice; for *chose*, see the Glossary, or compare st. 147.

93. By reading *Sche* for *So* (in the MS.) in the fifth line, the sense of the stanza is at once obvious; with the old reading, it is nonsense. Perhaps the original had *Sho*, not an unusual form of *she*.

94. *Chiere*, chair. But it is ill spelt; it should rather be *chaiere*. Tytler well remarks that it is worth while to compare this description of the winged Cupid with Milton's splendid description of Raphael in the *Paradise Lost*, bk. v. 277. King James may have been thinking of Chaucer, C. T. 1965:—

Before hire stood hire sone Cupido,
Upon his shuldres winges had he two;
And blind he was, as it is often sene,
A bowe he bar, and arwes brighte and kene.

And we may also observe the description in Chaucer's *Legend of Good Women*, l. 234:—

And in his hond, me thoughte, I saw him holde
Two fyry dartes, as the gledes rede,
And angelike his winges saw I sprede;
And, al be that men sain that blind is he; &c.

Thre arrowis; three arrows, of diverse metals—viz., one of gold, one of silver, and one of steel. I do not know whence King James derived these *three* arrows of Cupid. In the description just quoted, he has but *two* darts. In the *Romaunt of the Rose*, Love has *ten* arrows, which are particularly described. But the most likely source is Chaucer's *Assembly of Foules*, 211-217, where Cupid is said to have some arrows (the number of them not being mentioned), the heads of which his daughter tempers in a well, so

as they should serve
Some [for] to slee, and some to wounde and kerve.

Here we have the notion of the different effects produced by different arrows.

95. *A chaplet.* In the Romaunt of the Rose, Love is described as having a chaplet of red roses on his head.

96. *Depeyntit with sighis*, painted or ornamented with sighs. Imitated from Chaucer, C. T. 1920 :—

First in the temple of Venus maistow see
Wrought on the wall, ful pitous to beholde,
The broken slepes, and the *sikes* colde.

Fond I venus, I found Venus. Imitated from Chaucer, Assembly of Foules, 260-273 :—

And in a privy corner, in disport
Fond I Venus, and her porter Richesse . . .
And on a bedde of gold she lay to reste ; &c.

97. *Fair-calling.* In the Assembly of Foules, the porter of Venus is named *Richesse*, Riches ; in the Knights Tale, he is named Idleness. The name of Fair-calling may have been suggested by the name *Belacoil*, i.e., Fair-greeting, in the Romaunt of the Rose.

In l. 5 of this stanza, the word *that* should rather be omitted, that the line may run smoothly ; it may easily be understood.

98. *Salute*, saluted ; the past tense.

99. *By vertew pure*, by the pure virtue (or might) of your powerful aspects. *Virtue* often means power or effect, as in l. 4 of Chaucer's Prologue. In l. 6, *pure* means 'poor.' The poet alludes to the supposed power of the planet Venus in astrology.

100. *Of carefull hertes cure*, the cure of anxious hearts ; and, amid the huge fell rolling waves of love's rage, (art the) blissful and sure haven. Tytler says—'the huge rolling waves of Love's fell rage' ; which makes *fell* agree with the wrong substantive. Still, he rightly saw that *fell* is here an adjective.

Anker and keye, anchor and guide (see below). Tytler misprints *treue* for *keye*, though it is plainly written, and strangely explains it by 'true anchor.' He does not pay much heed to grammatical construction. For *keye*, Sibbald strangely substitutes the meaningless word *trige* ! As to the meaning of *keye*, we have the choice of *key* or *quay*. The latter would be quite in keeping, since James calls Venus *a haven* in the preceding line ; but I have no doubt that the sense is *key*, i.e., helm or guide, for the following reason—viz., that Chaucer misled him. In Chaucer's tr. of Boethius, bk. iii. pr. 12 (l. 2926, ed. Morris), where the original has *clauus et gubernaculum* (i.e., rudder and helm), we actually find the rendering 'a *keye* and a *stiere*' ; where it is obvious that our great poet was thinking of *clavis*, a key. We also learn by this that King James had read Chaucer's translation as well as the original, but had not detected this particular error.

Man, servant; the usual term. So again in st. 187. So Troilus says of Creseide, in Chaucer's Troil. i. 427:—

But as *her man* I wol ay liue and sterue.

Cf. E. *homage*, as derived from F. *homme*.

102. *Do me steruen*, cause me to die, kill me instantly.

103. *Law*, low down, below me.

104. *Efter grace*, i.e., to obtain grace. In l. 4, Tytler prints *She kest*, which alone will make sense; but he does not notice that the MS. really has the reading *Me kest*.

106. *Paciently* is here to be pronounced with *four* syllables; the line will then scan. *Pacience* is *three* syllables in st. 125, l. 2. The line is taken almost directly from Chaucer's Complaint of Mars, l. 21:

And patiently takth your auenture.

This will my son, this my son desires.

He can the stroke, he knows (how to deal) the stroke.

Humily, humbly. Quite a correct form; Tytler actually prints *truely*, which is not at all like it.

For *present* in l. 6, Tytler prints *pent*, which makes no sense, and loses a syllable. The transcriber did not understand the mark of abbreviation, as E. Thomson rightly observes.

I wil the schewe the more, I will shew thee the more.

107. This is a very difficult stanza. Tytler gives a loose paraphrase, hardly agreeing with his text; and, in order to get a sort of sense, inserts the word *God* between *wriith* and *alone*, without any hint that the word *God* is not in the MS., and without observing that the insertion upsets the scansion. The fifth line is evidently the one that is corrupt; and when we compare it with the second line in st. 120, the source of the corruption becomes clearer. In the latter case, I have little doubt that the right reading is *aughten*, written *aughtē*; that the Midland suffix *-en* was not understood by the scribe, and that he consequently substituted the abbreviation & for it. So here, I take *bynd &*, in the MS., to stand for *byndē*, or rather *bunden*, properly the past participle. I think it also tolerably certain that *mynes* is miswritten for *menys* (see st. 192), which would be better spelt *menes*, as in st. 111. By comparing all these stanzas together, this will appear more clearly. I therefore propose to read *with otheris bunden, menes to discern*. I should then paraphrase the stanza thus: 'This is to say, though it pertain to me, in the law of love, to govern (or wield) the sceptre, so that the effects of my bright beams have their aspects by eternal ordinance, bound up (in their influence) with others [i.e., with the aspects of other planets] so as to discern the means [viz., of obtaining results] at various times, both in things to come and (things) past—nevertheless it pertains not to me to direct events *alone*.' Briefly, 'I have certain powers, but they are bound up with the powers of other planets; I can discern ways of influence, at certain

times; but I have no power to act *alone*, independently of the other planets.' In the next stanza, the same argument is continued. This is the best I can make of the passage; perhaps some reader may be more fortunate.

Writh, to direct, control; lit. to turn and twist about. Cf. st. 122, l. 3, and see the Glossary.

108. The insertion of *by* improves both sense and metre. It means — 'wherefore behold that, by the influence of other (planets), thy person stands not in liberty.'

Otheris must here mean other planets; doubtless Saturn would be included, as his effects were considered baleful. See Chaucer, C. T. 1330, 2458, &c. The influence of the moon would also be, in a measure, adverse; see id. 2304, 2305; and also, perhaps, that of Mars, since Chaucer says (C. T. 2250):—

For, though so be that Mars is god of armes,
Your vertue is so grete in heuen aboue,
That, if you liste, I shal wel haue my loue.

Coursis, courses. This I take to be the right reading; for the long *s*, followed by a flourish, is sometimes used to denote *sis* as well as *se* or *ss*. There are several examples of this in the MSS. of Barbour. Tytler prints *course*, which leaves the line deficient.

Quhill of, &c.; till, by true service, thou hast won her grace. Tytler omits *grace*. The fact is that a line is drawn along above the word, as if to direct that it should be omitted; but the scribe altered his mind, for he afterwards deleted this line by drawing three short strokes downwards across it; it is, accordingly, to be retained. Still, it can be dispensed with; in which case *hir I-wone* means 'won her.'

109. *Als like*, ye are as like, as day is to night; *i.e.*, not like at all.

110. The MS., in the second line, actually has *like vnto*, which Tytler prints without comment. Thomson well observes that *like vnto* is an error for *unlike to*, the *vn-* being in the wrong place. As to the unlikeness between January and May, it is much enlarged upon in Chaucer's Marchantes Tale.

Thaire tabartis, their coats are not both made of (one) pattern. If *tabartis* be allowed its three syllables, the word *maid* is not required. Tytler prints *tavartis*; the fact being that *b* and *v* are often made much alike in Scottish MSS. So again, in st. 116, l. 6, he prints *yvete* for *ybete*. In both cases we must read *b*, not *v*. The *tabard* was a short coat, without sleeves, usually worn by heralds, and displaying an armorial bearing. Hence the difference in appearance between the cuckoo and nightingale is expressed by saying that their coats-of-arms are not alike. This quaint idea is not at all stranger than Chaucer's assigning coats-of-arms to Theban knights.

To peire, to pair, pair off; *i.e.*, in goldsmith's work, a fish's eye is unfit to be paired off with pearl, or to be made of equal value with it (lit. to be made as high as it). For the word *peire*, I am responsible.

The word, in the MS., is written 'purerese'; or it might be read as 'pererese' or even as 'prerese'; all of which are nonsensical forms. Tytler (against the MS.) prints *purcress*, of which he says: 'the word itself, or its etymology, I don't find (*sic*) in any glossary.' We might read *purchas with perll*, i.e., to purchase a pearl with; but I prefer *peire*, on the ground that only *one* syllable is needed; and I also think that it makes better sense. I may add that, after deciding upon this emendation, I found that Sibbald has the reading *pere* (be a peer to), which is a doublet of *peire*.

111. *Othir mo*, others besides. Observe that *goddels* is accented on the latter syllable; it stands for *goddesse* (observe the rime), and seems to signify 'goddesses' in the plural. Venus is really alluding to Minerva (see st. 112); and possibly to Fortune (st. 159).

To schorten with thy sore, to shorten thy grief with. This is the usual position of *with*—viz., next to the verb. See notes to st. 16.

113. *Gude hope*, Good-hope, here an allegorical personage, and Venus's messenger.

Joure alleris frend, the friend of you all. A better form would be *aller*, as in Chaucer, C.T. 825, where *our aller cok* means 'cock for us all,' lit. 'of us all.' *Aller* is for A.S. *ealra*, gen. pl. of *eal*, all. Hence *alleris* is formed by the needless addition of the pl. suffix *-is*. Tytler, not in the least understanding this, explains it by 'your ally, associate, or confederate'; which later editors (except Thomson) have carefully copied. Thomson says it is equivalent to Lat. *vester omnium amicus*. But this is again wrong; for it is really equivalent to *vestrum omnium amicus*. *Your* was originally the gen. pl. of the personal pronoun.

To lette the to murn, to prevent thee from mourning.

115. *At thair large*, at large; as we should now say. In Chaucer, C. T. 2290, Tyrwhitt prints, 'But it is good a man to *ben at large*'; whereas the right reading is *ben at his large*. It is easier to alter an author's language than to understand it. Cf. notes to st. 181.

Is nocht eft none, there is not again (i.e., even) one; an example of the double negative. Tytler omits *eft none*, leaving the line two syllables short.

Gevis charge, gives heed, pays attention.

116. *And for*, and because. The sense of this stanza is clear, but it is difficult to fix the construction. The idea of it is borrowed from the second stanza of Chaucer's *Lenvoy* a Scogan, especially the lines:—

But now so wepeth Venus in her spere,
That with her teres she wol drenche vs here.

That ze se, which ye see beat so fast upon the ground. Tytler prints *yvete*, which he explains by 'y-wet with my tears.' See notes to st. 110.

117. *Stynten*, cease. This use of *stynten* in the *first* person of the

present indicative is grammatically wrong; it is parallel to the misuse of *lakkith* in the same person, noticed in the notes to st. 27.

Men; here Tytler prints *me*, which upsets all the sense. After this word I have inserted *as*, to mend the metre. Such a use of *as* is quite idiomatic; cf. Chaucer, C. T. 87, 10859:—

And born him wel, *as* of so litel space.
With so hy reuerence, *as* by his chere.

118. *Compacience*, sympathy.

119. Tytler puts a comma after *renewe*, and observes that 'the following verses in this and the next stanza are very obscure.' By removing the comma, we remove some of the difficulty. We may also supply a relative before *Most*. We then get some sense—viz., 'At that time folks always begin to renew that service unto love, which is ever due, (and which) most commonly has ever his (due) observance, and have repentance of their previous sloth.' If we might boldly substitute *That* for *Most*, it would be clearer.

Observance, i.e., homage, due reverence, is the right word here; cf. Chaucer, C. T. 1502:—

And for to don his observance to May.

120. The obscurity of this stanza is at once cleared up by changing *ought and* (in the second line) to *oughten*; the scribe would easily have misunderstood the Midland suffix *-en*, and seems actually to have made the same mistake elsewhere; see notes to st. 107. We then get *oughten maist weye*—i.e., ought most to weigh, or pay regard. Thus the sense is: 'Thus mayest thou say, that my great influences, unto which ye ought to pay most heed, is all forgotten for sloth, (which is) no little offence; and therefore speak to them in this wise, as I have here bidden thee, and convey the matter which has been all the better expressed already.'

121. *Say on than*, continue then to say. Tytler makes here an excellent suggestion—viz., that Venus's complaint has reference to the wars of Henry V. in France, which, 'though glorious, had been disastrous both to France and England, and particularly to the nobility of both kingdoms.' Henry died on the 31st of August 1422; and the Kingis Quair was doubtless written in 1423, so that the reference to a period of mournfulness is very much to the point. Thomson (p. vi) cavils against this suggestion, because he thinks that James could have had no interest in the state of England. But observe the whole context, and remember that the lady Joan was English.

122. Cf. Chaucer, C. T. 2455:—

My dere daughter Venus, quod Saturne; &c.

Al hale, all whole, wholly, entirely.

Be tyme, betimes, in good time.

In l. 6, *with* helps out both sense and metre.

124. In l. 3, *hy* helps out the metre, and is a fitting epithet.

125. In Chaucer's Assembly of Fowles, l. 242, we find that 'Dame Patience' is mentioned as sitting before the temple-door which the poet saw in his dream.

The said renewe; this, says Tytler, is unintelligible and must be wrong. By *renewe* we may understand 'renewal'; the chief difficulty is in *said*. Perhaps it should be *sad*, which is constantly used in the sense of sober, serious, sedate, grave, and is very fittingly applied to anything connected with Minerva. Perhaps we may take *sad renewe* to mean 'grave (*i.e.*, well-considered) renewal,' *i.e.*, sober fresh endeavour. But this is not very satisfactory.

127. *Procure* must be accented on the former syllable. That it really was sometimes so accented, is clear from the poem of Alexander and Dindimus, ed. Skeat, where it is thrice spelt *procre*.

Fonde, to endeavour to obtain some comfort for thy penance at my hand. *Fonde* is not 'to find,' as Tytler says, but 'to try to find'; it answers to A.S. *fandian*, a derivative of *findan*.

128. *Anothir* is much better than *othir*, as in the MS.

129. *Of nyce lust*, upon foolish desire.

Gif the ne list, if it does not please thee.

130. *Him*, viz., God; as explained by the line following, 'who has the guidance of you all in His hand.'

132. *Bot gif*, unless.

And vtrid, &c.; we must certainly understand *bot gif* again before this clause. I suppose it to mean, 'and (unless) your word be uttered according to moderation (lit. by measure); (having regard to) the place, the hour, the manner, and the way, if mercy is to admit your service.' Tytler proposes to alter *vtrid* to *outrid*, which he explains by 'out-red, gone through, or regulated by measure and propriety, as to time and place.' But he does not tell us where he found *out-red*, nor why it means 'gone through.' There can be no doubt that *utred* is the modern *uttered*, which sometimes meant 'published' or 'made known.' I had at first thought that we are to construe the sentence thus: 'and (unless) the place, hour, manner, and way be uttered (put forward) according to moderation'; for this is what the grammar would lead us to. I now suspect that l. 6 stands alone, and is left, very awkwardly, without anything to govern the substantives. As to the 'circumstances' here referred to, see my notes to P. Plowman, p. 186.

133. Quoted from Ecclesiastes, iii. 1. Chaucer, C. T. 9846, says:—

For alle thing hath time, as sayn thise clerkes.

Abit, abides; short for *abideth*. So also, two lines below, *writ* is short for *writeth*. Such abbreviations are common in the third pers. sing. of the indicative: Chaucer has *abit*, C. T. 16643; *rit* (rideth), 976; &c. In the last two lines of the stanza, syllables must be supplied, as indicated; for the rime is a double one. The scribe probably thought the rime was single, and left out something accordingly.

134. *Hid*, hidden. Tytler simply omits this word, without a word of comment. It may be granted that it can be dispensed with.

135. *Lokin* is printed *lok in* by Tytler, as it stands in the MS. But it is certainly all one word, answering to A.S. *locen*, pp. of the strong verb *lucan*, to lock. The simplest proof of this is that we have had the word already (with the prefix *i-*) in st. 69, where it rimes with *slokin* and *wrokin*. The sense is—'till she be fast locked amid his net.'

Fatoure, deceiver; Sibbald reads *feator*. Tytler actually prints *satoure*, which he explains by 'the lustful person'; Chalmers further explains that it means 'a satyr.' But there is no such word with the suffix *-oure*. Gower uses the word *faitour* more than once; Conf. Amant. i. 47, 65, &c.

136. Compare the description of the hypocritical falcon in the second part of Chaucer's Squieres Tale; and Gower's description of Hypocrisy in book i. of the Confessio Amantis.

137. *Ar suspect*, are suspected. Tytler prints *are*, but he makes no allusion to the MS. reading *and*.

139. *And wold bene he*, and should like to be the man.

Be him, by Him that died upon the cross.

140. The sense of this stanza is entirely lost by the mistake of the scribe in l. 5. For *Wald* we must certainly read *Nold*, i.e., 'I would not be the man who should in any way be the blemisher of her good fame.' One wonders what the former editors supposed the meaning to be. The sentiment comes very near to that expressed in Chaucer's Book of the Duchess, 1262:—

That I *ne wilned* thing but good,
And worship, and to kepe her name,
Ouer al thing, and drede her shame.

141. Cf. Chaucer, C. T. 1489:—

This is theeffect, and his entente plein.

Faynt, feigned, pretended. But this is not a happy expression; we should expect *faute*, i.e., a fault. The last two lines mean: 'but so desire doth encompass my wits, (that) I regard no joy on earth except your favour.' For he means to say that Minerva's favour will procure him his heart's desire. Tytler puts commas after *desire* and *erth*, and has none after *compace*; but this gives no sense.

142. The fifth line, in the MS., is:—

That day sall I neuer vp-rise.

This is deficient and unmeaning; I therefore alter it to—

That day sall neuer be I sall vp-rise,

i.e., that day shall never come (when) I shall rise up (or make an attempt). Such a repetition of *sall* may have puzzled the scribe.

In balance, in jeopardy, in hazard, in risk. Cf. Chaucer, C. T. 16079:—

I dare lay *in balance*
Al that I haue in my possessioun;

i.e., I dare risk all.

143. *For oure all thing*, for over, or above, all things (Tytler).

Cf. Chaucer, C. T. 1120:—

The fresche beautee sleth me sodenly; &c.

Hir worschip sauf, her honour being kept safe.

144. In l. 6, the insertion of *hir* improves both sense and metre.

145. In this stanza, unless the scribe has greatly erred, the words *duellyng*, *melling*, and *repellyng* are used to form but *single* rimes, the accent being on *-yng*. We may suspect that the scribe has ruined the metre.

Hir, her who has in hand the two lots, both of your weal and your woe. The allusion is to the goddess Fortune, introduced in st. 159.

146. In the second line, Tytler omits *all*, but curiously enough cites it in a footnote, so that the omission was an oversight. The only way to make sense is to read *Thar* for *Quhare* in l. 5. It then means: 'And how so be it, that some clerks declare, that all your lot is caused beforehand on high in the heaven, by whose great influences ye are more or less moved to (your) turning about—viz., there in the world (below), thus calling it [your lot] on that account (by the name of) Fortune, and so that the diversity of their influences should bring about necessity.' It is obscure enough, but the poet is handling a most obscure subject—viz., the question of predestination, and the contradiction between free-will and necessity. The whole is imitated from Boethius, bk. v. proses 2 and 3; whom Chaucer copies at great length in Troil. iv. 960, &c.; and playfully alludes to the same problem in his Nonne Prestes Tale (C. T. 15240), referring us to Boethius and Bishop Bradwardine for further information. The beginning of the next stanza resembles Gower, Prol. to Confessio Amantis (i. 22):—

That we fortune clepe so,
Out of the man himself it groweth.

147. *In commune*, in common, in ordinary. Tytler, not understanding, as it would seem, the abbreviation for *com-*, oddly prints *gmune* (*sic*), both here and elsewhere.

Efter purpose, according to a purpose.

148. In l. 5, the substitution of *that* for *it* is obviously right.

Foreknawin is, is aware beforehand. It is the *past*, not the present participle. Cf. st. 45.

149. *Strangest*, strongest (not strangest).

150. *The schewit haue*, have shewn thee. *Haue* must be inserted.

151. 'Within a beam, which she, piercing through the firmament,

extended from the divine country.' Tytler points out the accidental resemblance to Milton, P. L. iv. 555 :—

Thither came Uriel, gliding though the even
On a sun-beam, swift as a shooting star
In autumn thwarts the night.

152. The passage included in stanzas 152-173 inclusive was edited by me, from the MS., with notes, at pp. 42-47 of my *Specimens of English Literature from 1394 to 1579*, first printed in 1871. Many of the notes are repeated here.

Maner soun, kind of sound. *Of* is always omitted after *maner* in Chaucer and other writers of the period.

153. *Can swym*, did swim, swam. This passage is imitated from Chaucer, *Ass. of Fowles*, 183, &c. :—

A garden saw I full of blosmed bewis
Vpon a riuer, in a grene mede . . .
With floures white, blewes, yelowes, and rede
And colde welle stremes, nothing dede,
That swommen fulle of smale fishes lighte
With finnes rede, and scales siluer-brighte . . .
And further, al about I gan espye
The dredful ro, the buk, the hart, and hinde,
Squyrels, and bestes smale of gentle kinde.

Gesserant, not 'a precious stone,' as Tytler imagined, but a coat of bright mail. The scales of the fishes glittered like burnished armour.

154. '*An hye way*, I found there a way like as it were a high-way.' This again is like Chaucer, *Ass. of Fowles*, 172, &c. :—

For ouer al, wher I myn eyen caste,
Were trees clad with leues, that ay shal laste,
Ech in his kind, with colour fresh and grene.

155. *Fere lyonesse*, his companion, the lioness. *Fere* does not mean 'fierce or wild,' as Tytler says; that would have been spelt *fers*. The Earl of Surrey wrote a song to a lady that refused to dance with him, beginning "Eche beast can chose hys *fere*"; Tottel's *Misc.* 218.

Smaragdyne, emerald. Tytler wonders how the panther could be like an emerald. The fact is, that the poet follows the usual descriptions in the old so-called 'Bestiaries,' or descriptions of beasts. Compare, for example, the *Bestiary* printed by Dr Morris for the early English Text Society; the *Bestiary* of Philip de Thauin, in Anglo-French, printed in Mr Wright's *Popular Treatises on Science*; A. Neckam, *De Naturis Rerum*, ed. T. Wright; Solinus *Polyhistor*, and the like. In a description of the panther in the *Codex Exoniensis*, ed. Thorpe, it is described as being of various colours, *like Joseph's coat*. In A. Golding's translation of Solinus, b. i. c. 26, it is said of panthers that 'the hayre of their skins . . . is either white or of a *skye colour*'; and Neckam (p. 214) says the same. I suspect that our author is confusing the colour of the emerald with

that of the sky. By way of further illustration, I here make a note that Chaucer, in his Assembly of Foules, calls the stork 'the wreaker of adultery'; the reason for which epithet is at once apparent on consulting Neckam's *De Naturis Rerum* (lib. i. c. 64), where the story is told at length.

The slawe ase, the slow ass, the drudging beast of pain, *i.e.*, of painful toil.

Werely, or *warlike* porcupine, armed with quills.—Tytler. It was said to loosen its quills, and dart them at dogs that pursued it; see A. Golding, tr. of Solinus, b. i. c. 42.

Percyng lynx; Neckam (p. 219) tells us that the lynx's piercing sight could see through nine walls!

Lufare unicorn, lover unicorn. The descriptions in Neckam and Philip de Thaun show us why the unicorn (otherwise called *rhinoceros* or *monoceros*) is here called a *lover*. When the hunter wishes to catch a unicorn, he instructs a young girl to entice it; the unicorn goes to sleep with his head on the girl's lap, and then the hunter has him fast. Neckam gallantly remarks:—

*Rhinoceros capitur amplexu virginis; at quis
Consimili renuat proditione capi?*

Voidis venym, dispels venom with his ivory horn. *Voidis* does not mean 'ejects,' as Tytler supposed, not knowing the story. The unicorn's horn was supposed to dispel poison; Mrs Palliser, in her *Historical Devices*, p. 20, gives an example of a unicorn depicted as dipping his horn into water, with the motto *Venena fello*. In a footnote she shows that the *essai* of unicorn's horn is often mentioned in inventories. Cf. Massinger, *Roman Actor*, ii. 1. 46, and see E. Phipson's *Animal Lore of Shakspeare's Time*, p. 453.

156. 'There I saw the active tiger, full of cruelty, issue anew out of his haunt.' See *fery* in Jamieson; Tytler misprints it *fere*.

Standar oliphant, the elephant that always stands. The elephant was said to have only one joint in his legs, so that he could not lie down. He used to lean against a tree to go to sleep; see Philip de Thaun, p. 101; Golding's tr. of Solinus, bk. i. c. 32; E. Phipson (as above), p. 146.

The wedowis Inemye, the widow's enemy; because he steals her chickens. See Chaucer's *Nonne Prestes Tale*, which is doubtless here alluded to, as is clear from the opening lines of it.

Clymbare gayte, goat that climbs.

Alblastrye, warlike weapons for shooting; cf. *artillery*. Mr Chalmers suggests that the sinews of the elk may have been used for bow-strings; I know of nothing to confirm this. In fact, I believe the true solution to be very different. The prep. *for* frequently means 'against,' or 'as a defence against'; see my note to *P. Plowman*, C. ix. 59. Hence *for alblastrye* means 'against warlike crossbow-bolts and darts.' Now 'shields and targets were made of the skin of the elk,

which were thick enough *to resist the point of the sharpest spear*'; E. Phipson, *Animal Lore*, p. 122.

Herknere bore, boar that listens, boar with keen hearing.

Holsum grey, badger, wholesome for hurts or wounds. Under the article *Grey*, in his Dictionary, Jamieson has the following note upon this passage: "I am informed, by a gentleman who has paid particular attention to this subject, that, in old books of surgery, badger's grease is mentioned as an ingredient in plaisters; undoubtedly as *holsum* for *hortis*, i.e., hurts or wounds. He views the designation *herknere* as applicable to the wild boar, because he is noted for his quickness of hearing, and when hunted halts from time to time, and turns up his head on one side, to listen if he be pursued."

Haire, hare, that often repairs to the worts or vegetables. Tytler repeats *hortis*, instead of printing *wortis* here. Many plants were named after the hare, as *hare-bell*, *hare-mint*, *hare's-foot*, *hare's-lettuce*, *hare's-tail*, *hare's-ear*, &c.

157. *Bugill*, bugle-ox, who draws, &c. A. Golding's translation of Solinus, b. i. c. 31, tells us that bugles are "in manner lyke oxen, brystled, wyth rough manes on their neckes." See E. Phipson, *Animal Lore*, p. 134.

Martrik, marten. *Foynzee*, beech-marten; F. *fouine*. The MS. is indistinct, and may be read *foynzer*, but I think *foynzee* is right.

Tippit, tipped like jet; viz., on its tail. *Noght say(is)* "ho!" never says *stop!*—i.e., never ceases. The word *ho* is an exclamation, meaning 'stop!' see Chaucer, C. T. 2535.

Ravin bare, ravening or ravenous bear.

Chamelot; the camel, full of hair, (suitable for making) camlet. This statement is probably due to a popular etymology which connected *camlet* with *camel*; see the Glossary. At the same time, it would seem that camel's hair was really sometimes used in making camlet.

158. *To purpose*, to my purpose, to my story.

Furth, forth, along. To complete the line, it seems as if the *r* must be strongly trilled, so as to make *fur-r-th* dissyllabic; just as *pearl* is so in Burns.

In hye, in haste; a *very* common phrase in Barbour.

159. *Round*; perhaps *rounde*, dissyllabic.

Aspide must be read for *spide*, to complete the line; it is, in fact, the commoner form; see Chaucer, C. T. 13521.

Cleuering, clinging, clambering; holding on as a cat by its claws, which were called in Middle English *clivers*. As to the 'goddess Fortune,' see Boethius, bk. ii. pr. 1; Chaucer's Troil. i. 848, iii. 617, iv. 1, v. 1552; and Chaucer's Balade of the Visage [not Village] without Painting.

160. The fourth line is left imperfect. Instead of *and* (here denoted by the usual abbreviation, which occurs over and over again)

Tytler prints a *Q* turned upside down, adding, 'the reader's own ingenuity must supply this mark of abbreviation; perhaps it may be for *askew* or *askewis*.' This is too ingenious. All that we have to do is to *complete* the line, and I have no doubt that *of glewis* are the two omitted words. *Glewis*, lit. glees, also freaks, was the very word used with particular reference to the *freaks* or *tricks* of Fortune, or the *chances* of battle; see *Gle* in Jamieson's Dictionary.

161. The word *ermyn* seems to be trisyllabic; this may have been due to the trilling of the *r* (as *er-re-myn*).

Degoutit with the self, spotted with the same; alluding to the black tails with which white ermine is decorated. Cf. st. 157.

Chiere, demeanour, should have been spelt *chere*, as elsewhere.

It wold slake, it (her cheer) would leave off frowning.

And sche, if she; *for* must be inserted.

162. *Was*, which was; the relative being omitted. The MS. even omits *was*.

163. *Weltering*, rolling, turning. Fortune's wheel is represented as turning on a horizontal axis, whilst numbers of men cling on to it. As some clutch at it suddenly, or fall off into the pit beneath, it as suddenly turns round.

Strange thing, strange thing. Such is obviously the right reading, though the MS. has *strong*. This is because *strong* was sometimes written *strang*; see st. 149.

Clymben wold, wanted to climb; Tytler wrongly prints *clumben*.

164. 'And on the wheel [viz., near the highest point] there was a small vacant space, nearly stretched across (like an arch) from the lower to the higher part (of it); and they must be clever who long sat in their place there; so unsteadily, at times, she caused it to go on one side. There was nothing but climbing up, and immediately hurrying down; and there were some too who had fallen so sorely, that their courage for climbing up there again was gone.'

Fallyng is for *fallen*, the pp.; as in st. 45.

In l. 6, the omission of *so* before *sore* was due to the recurrence of the letters *s, o*. Cf. Chaucer, Troil. iv. 323 :—

O ye louers, that hye vpon the whele
Ben set of Fortune, in gode auenture !

165. *Hath (thaim) vp ythrungin*, has forcibly thrust them up again; *thaim* must be supplied. In l. 6, we must supply *thought*, i.e., expected, hoped.

166. *Presence*; so in Tytler; MS. *presene*.

167. *Lyis the on hert*, lies upon thy heart.

Stant, stands, is. *Wald*, wouldst.

Endlang and ouerthwert, 'throughout my whole frame, in length and breadth.'—Tytler. The expression is taken from Chaucer's C. T. 1993.

168. *In poynt to mate*, on the point of being mated. An allusion to chess, suggested by Chaucer's Book of the Duchess, ll. 620, &c.

For fals Fortune hath played a game
At chess with me, alas! the while . . .
 Therwith Fortunè seide 'Chek here!'
 And *mate* in mid point of the chekkere.

169. *Fundin stale*; Tytler prints *fund in* (though it is *fundin* in the MS.), and explains it by 'been long in ward, and sequestered from friends,' though he gives no reason for such a construction. Still *fundin stale* means 'found a stall or a prison.' I doubt if the expression *stale-mate* was in use at this period, else we might apply it to the poet's case, as he could not move from his place; but such an explanation seems to be barred by the use of the word *mate* above, which certainly means check-mate, not stale-mate.

Werdis wele, weal of the fates, *i.e.*, good fortune.

170. *Has stallit*, hast kept.

Be froward opposyt, by means of the perverse men opposite you. This refers to the idea of the wheel; the king is prevented from climbing up by enemies, of whom, however, Fortune prophesies that 'now shall they turn, and look upon the dirt,' *i.e.*, they will go past the highest point of the wheel, and fall forward into the pit below. But this does not explain the hopelessly difficult phrase *guhare till aspert*, the meaning of which is unknown, and which must be corrupt. Jamieson says *aspert* means 'rough,' from the Fr. *aspere*; but this does not help us one jot, nor does it account for the final *t*. This *t* is the sign of a past participle, as if *aspert* meant 'exasperated,' from F. *asperer*, to exasperate (Cotgrave). Hence *be froward*, &c., should mean 'by means of the perverse hostile men, whereunto (they were) exasperated.' Even this is very obscure, though less forced than any other explanation.

I may here observe that Jamieson quotes this passage s.v. *Dert*, and says that the sense obviously is 'dart a look on thee.' But it is 'obviously' nothing of the kind; the king's foes, in falling head downwards, must have been wonderful men to succeed in darting looks on him during the process.

171. *Prime*; it runs past prime by an hour or more; *i.e.*, the king's age was past *prime*, and the half of his life was 'near away,' as it is said in the next line. He was already nearly thirty. Fortune here compares his life to a day, which was nearly half done. The hour of *prime* varied, but in Chaucer it sometimes means 9 A.M.; so here, an hour and more past 9 means nearly 11 A.M. See the note on *prime* in my edition of Chaucer's Astrolabe.

172. *That fro*, those that from.

173. *Besy goste*, restless spirit. This stanza is not imitated from the well-known dying address of the Emperor Hadrian to his soul, com-

menacing 'Animula vagula blandula,' as Tytler supposes; but is directly copied from Chaucer's Troilus, iv. 302 :—

O wery gost, that errest to and fro,
Why nilt thou fleen out of the wofulleste
Body, that euer might on grounde go?
O soule, lurking in this woful neste,
Fly forth out [of] my herte, and lete it breste . . .
Thy righte place is now no lenger here.

Artow drest, art thou guided, or treated; lit. directed.

Walking, waking, whilst awake. So in Lyndsay's Monarché, b. iv. l. 5551, we find: 'The Scripture biddis vs *walk* and pray.'

174. *Couert my-self*, 'within myself.'—Tytler. There is no authority for this, nor is it quite the sense required. I suspect it is an error for *Towert*, put for *towart*, or *toward*; which gives the right sense. We find the spelling *towart* for *toward* in Barbour's Bruce, i. 83.

Sueuyng is, of course, an error for *sueuening*; the scribe lost his place in the word. In l. 6, supply *I*.

My spirit with to glad, to gladden my spirit with. Cf. st. 190.

177. *Kalendis of comfort*, 'beginning of comfort, a dawn of hope.'—Tytler. See note to st. 34.

178. *List*, edge; Hooker has the expression '*list*, or marginal border'; see Johnson's Dictionary. Tytler prints *lese*, without any hint that the MS. has *list* quite plainly; indeed, Sibbald so prints it.

I explain *branchis bryght and schene* with reference to the flourishes with which the writing was ornamented; there was but *one* branch of gilliflowers, on every edge (or available space) of which a sentence was written in gold letters, ornamented with bright flourishes. It refers to the old style of illumination, so common in MSS. of the period.

179. *Bring the newis glad*, bring thee glad news. Observe that *news* is plural.

Besid, close to, near to.

Present, presented; the past tense.

180. *Beddis hed*, bed's head. This was where Chaucer's Clerk kept his books; C. T. 295.

181. *The quhich*, the which token truly, ever after, and day by day, though it had at first mastered (*i.e.*, overwhelmed) all my wits, (yet) from henceforth it did away the pains (of my grief). We must read *from hennesferth*, as elsewhere, in st. 69, 144. Tytler prints *Quhich he offerth*; the MS. has *Quhich hensferth*.

To quikin my lore, to quicken (*i.e.*, vivify, give life to) my learning. Tytler oddly prints *qmkin*, the *m* being a little above the line (whence Sibbald prints *quomkin*!); and, as this makes no sense, he puts a comma after the second *day*, another after *larges*, and informs us that *my lore to my larges* is 'a proverbial phrase for I will exert my wit, to make a return or recompence.' This is all invention; the sense is 'to quicken my learning day by day, (so that) I am come again to my

freedom, (and) to bliss with her who is my sovereign.' This is an interesting allusion, as it tells us that at this time he obtained liberty to visit the lady Joan. With *to my larges*, compare *at thair large* st. 115.

Here the poem truly ends; the rest is an Epilogue.

182. *Apoun so litill evyn*, even upon so little; see st. 21. Tytler says 'upon so small an event.' Certainly *evyn*, as a spelling of *event*, is entirely unknown.

Croppin, crept. In the MS. the *r* is inserted above the line as a correction; Tytler, not knowing this, prints *coppin*, which he supposed to mean 'raised,' from M. E. *cop*, a top. This is impossible, because a verb formed from *cop* would be weak, and the pp. would be *copped*.

War croppin onys In hevin, i.e., had once crept into heaven, is extremely graphic; and the M. E. *crepen* (though now weak) was a strong verb, with pp. *cropen*, as in Chaucer, C. T. 4257. And, in another passage, where it is abbreviated to *crope*, it is used with *were*; see Chaucer, C. T. 11918.

Wald, &c.; would, after (uttering) *one* expression of thanks, utter six or seven more for joy. Tytler omits *o*.

I can say you no more; an expression caught from Chaucer; see, e.g., C. T. 4595. Compare st. 187, l. 5.

183. *His goldin cheyne*, his golden chain. The chain of love, which binds together all things, is mentioned in Boethius, bk. ii. met. 8. Chaucer alludes to it in C. T. 2993; and in his Troilus, iii. 1744-1764.

Quhich thinkis; the MS. has *Quhich this*, which is nonsense; the scribe omitted a part of the word. The sense is, 'Let us see who, that expects to win his heart's mistress, would blame me for writing thereof' (i.e., about Love).

184. This prayer for lovers is imitated from the Proem to bk. i. of Chaucer's Troilus.

185. *The dance of lufe*; Tytler misprints it *the dance of lyfe*, thus wholly missing the point; see note to st. 45.

186. *The rose*; a direct allusion to Le Roman de la Rose, where the courage required to pluck that flower is enlarged upon.

Spurn, trip against an obstacle, stumble.

187. *Lessen*; Tytler prints *lesseren*, but there is no such word.

It war to long, it would be too long. In l. 5, insert *you*; see st. 182, and the note.

The deth. By a singular coincidence, it was literally true that she defended the king when he was being assassinated. Tytler quotes the following: 'Having struck down the King, whom the Queen, by interposing her body, sought to save, being with difficulty pulled from him, she received two wounds, and he with twenty-eight was left dead.'—Hawthornden.

188. *Laud*, praise; Tytler prints *land*.

189. I supply *heye*, for the metre.

Glitteren; at first sight it looks like 'glateren' in the MS., and Tytler so prints it; but wrongly.

190. *Hir with*, to gladden her with, ere that she went further (on her way). Cf. st. 174.

Mot I-thankit, may all other flowers be thanked!

191. *Sanctis marciall*, saints (of the month) of March. No other sense can be assigned here, and we must compare it with his former mention of the same month in st. 20; see note on p. 63. Hence we see that he thanks the saints of March, because that month was the 'first cause' of his good fortune, though it had formerly been the time of the beginning of his sorrows. But for his captivity, he would not have seen his love.

First fortunyt, it first happened to me, that my heart's remedy and comfort should appear.

192. The necessity for the insertion of *ȝit* in l. 7 is proved by comparison with l. 7 of st. 193.

194. The last four stanzas form the Envoy. Compare Chaucer, Troil. v. 1798.

Causing, causing (men) to know your simplicity and poverty. So also Chaucer, in his Troil. v. 1808, prays that no one may *mis-metre* him.

195. *In presence* is the right phrase, not *in the presence*, as in the MS., which spoils the line; it means, in general, to appear (as we should say) in good society. See Chaucer, C. T. 9083.

No wicht, no person, unless the mercy of her, who is thy guide and director, will admit thee (my poem) for the good-will she bears me; to whom do thou, on my behalf, piteously make entreaty.

196. The last three lines of this stanza, as they stand in the MS., are sheer nonsense. It is quite clear that a substantive must be supplied after *oure*, and the right substantive is clearly *lif*, or *fate*, or *weird*. Next, it is clear that *coutht* in l. 6 must be *couth*, for the passage is obviously imitated from Chaucer, C. T. 4614:—

For in the sterres, clerer than is glas,
Is writen, god wot! *who so coude it rede*,
The deth of euery man, withouten drede.

Lastly, in l. 5, as the poet cannot *think* God (as in the MS.), it must be that he would *thank* God. With these necessary alterations, we get the following sense: 'Whom we thank, Who has written all our life, whoever could read it, many a year since, high in the circular figure of the heavens.' The reader must not omit to notice that the poet winds up this stanza by repeating the *first* line of the poem; I have therefore marked it as if it were a quotation. The reference is to the old belief, that a man's horoscope was written in the heavens at his birth; this is why he says, 'agone syne mony a ȝere.' See Chaucer, C. T. 4610.

197. *Impnis*; so in Tytler, though the MS. has *Infpnis*, which he does not tell us; however, it occurs again in st. 33, l. 3. The poet

says, 'I commend my book, (written) in (stanzas of) seven lines, to (the protection) of the hymns of my dear masters Gower and Chaucer, &c. ; and, moreover, I commend their souls to the bliss of heaven.' This commendation of his poem to the *poems* of Chaucer and Gower is somewhat singular; it must mean that he wishes it to be understood that he has been guided in his composition by their authority. In how many places he has copied Chaucer more or less closely, has been shewn in these notes; but I do not think it will be found that he owed much to Gower directly. Still, we may take it to mean that he had read and admired the *Confessio Amantis*, the reputation of which stood much higher then than it does now. The indirect influence of Gower appears nevertheless in the whole tone of his poem, which has much of Gower's gravity and moralising, and very little of Chaucer's lightness of heart and humour.

I may here mention that, in Prof. Morley's *English Writers*, vol. i. pt. 2. p. 453, an additional stanza is given by some mistake. This stanza is not in the MS. nor in the editions, and obviously belongs to some other poem, since it speaks of Lydgate as being dead, though he did not die till about 1460.

NOTES TO THE BALLAD OF GOOD COUNSEL.

THERE is no title to the original, but I call it "Good Counsel" because it is an obvious imitation of the "Ballad of Good Counsel" by Chaucer, which begins, "Fle fro the presse, and dwel with sothfastnesse," and has for its refrain, "And truth thee schal deliuer, it is no drede." Both ballads alike consist of three seven-line stanzas, the last line in each stanza recurring without alteration. I print at length three of the copies, with a collation of the fourth. They occur in the following MSS. and books:—

1. MS. Kk. 1. 5, in the Cambridge University Library; already printed by Dr Lumby in his edition of *Ratis Raving*¹ published for the Early English Text Society.
2. The Bannatyne MS. in the Advocates' Library, Edinburgh. I am indebted to Mr John Small, of the University Library, Edinburgh, for a copy of this, collated with the MS. He informs me that it has been printed by the Hunterian Club (Glasgow.)

¹ This title is not explained by the editor; it means 'Rate's Raving,' *Ratis* being the genitive case of the author's name, who pleasantly calls his poem 'a raving.' MS. Ashmole 61 (Oxford) contains a collection of romances by a person of this name.

3. The Gude and Godlie Ballates, 1578, reprinted by David Laing, in 1868 (p. 202). See a copy of it in Dr Lumby's notes to Ratis Raving, p. 119.

4. Ane compentiovs Booke of godlie and spiritvall Songs; Edinb. 1621, 8vo. See a copy of it in D. Irving's History of Scottish Poetry, 1861, p. 152.

From a collation of these copies, I have attempted to restore the text, though the variations in some places are too great to allow of certainty as to the right reading.

The following notes refer to particular words and phrases:—

2. *Noblay* is the right word, signifying nobility or noble rank. It occurs in Barbour's Bruce, 8. 211, 15. 271, and is contracted from O. F. *noblete*. In the later versions the scribes have spoilt the line in attempting to alter the word. The reading *nobill-ray* in version 2 may have arisen from the form *nobillay*, another spelling of *noblay*; see The Bruce, 9. 95, 17. 225.

3. 'Of any weal or of whatever rank thou be.' This seems to be the best reading, and merely requires the change of *of* to *or* in version 1.

4. *His steppis sew*, follow its steps. Here *his* is the genitive of the neuter pronoun, and refers to *virtue*. The old word *sew* has been translated in later copies by *persew* and *follow*, to the ruin of the scansion.

Dreid thee non effray, dread for thyself no terror. *Thee* is the dat. case. *Effray*, dread, fear, terror, occurs in The Bruce, 11. 250, 13. 270, &c., and answers to F. *effroi*. *Affray* is not quite so good a spelling, but is common, occurring in The Bruce, 3. 26, 6. 423, &c.

5. *Exil*, exile, banish; the reading *eject vice* gives a sad jolt to the rhythm. Such spellings as *wyce* for *vyce* are common in Lowland Scotch MSS.

6. *Thy luf began*, began by loving thee. Here *thy luf* means 'love of thee.' This use of *thy* occurs occasionally.

7. 'And for every inch he will requite thee (by giving thee) a span.' Alluding to the proverb—'Give him an inch, and he'll take an ell.' In Hazlitt's Proverbs, p. 142, this proverb is cited; and with it a quotation from Armin's Nest of Ninnies, 1608: 'Give me an inch to-day, I'll give thee an ell to-morrow.'

10. *Thy tym to compt*, thy time (when thou comest) to count it; *i.e.*, the length of thy life, when considered.

11. *Soyñ*; I adopt this spelling of 'soon' from The Bruce (4. 126, 179, &c.) in preference to *some*, in order to avoid writing a final *e*. It should always be remembered that final *e* seldom constitutes a syllable in the Northern dialect, and is best avoided in writing. We might write *soun*; we find *soune* in The Bruce, 1. 566. The line means: 'for of green grass soon comes withered hay'; suggested by various passages in the Bible, such as James, i.

10, Ps. xc. 6; &c. Jamieson illustrates *walowit* from Douglas's Virgil (see Small's edition, ii. 127. 14. iii. 76. 10, 110. 11); Pinkerton's Select Ballads, i. 13; Wyntoun, i. Prol. 123; &c. The most interesting examples are to be found in Wyclif's translation of Mark, iv. 6, and James, i. 11: 'And whanne the sunne roos vp, it *welwide* for heete, and it driede vp, for it hadde no roote.' 'The sunne roos vp with heete, and driede the gras . . .; and so a riche man *welwith* in his weies.' It is the A.S. *wealwian*, to dry up, allied to G. *welken*, to wither, prov. E. *wilt*, to wither; and has nothing whatever to do (as Jamieson imagined) with the G. *falb*, E. *fallow*, or the Lat. *flauus*. The radical sense is rather 'to be rolled or shrivelled up'; cf. A.S. *wealcan*, to roll (whence mod. E. *walk*).

12. *Quhill licht is of the day*, whilst the light of the day remains, whilst daylight lasts. This is nothing but a version of John, ix. 4, and is the best reading. Indeed, the reading *quhill suith is of thy fay*, i.e., which is the truth of thy faith, gives no good sense. *Suith* is for *suth*, sooth; both sb. and adj.

15. *Sen word is thrall*, since speech is a slave; the author contrasts speech with thought, and calls it a 'thrall' by comparison with the freedom of thought.

16. *Thou dant*, do thou make tame; E. *daunt*, derived (through the French) from Lat. *domitare*. *That power hes and may*, that has power and is of might. Here *may* has the force of *can*, i.e., has might. He alludes to James, iii. 8. Some editors wrongly put a comma after *hes*, and read this line in conjunction with 'the next, as if he meant 'and may thou shut thine eyes.' This is quite contrary to the usual habits of our old authors.

19. *Graip or thou slyd*, grope ere thou slip; i.e., feel your way before you begin to slide into a ditch. This well suits the rest of the line—viz., 'and creep forth (go slowly forwards) on thy way; of which *and keip furth the hie way* is a corruption due to mistaking *creep* for *keep*, and so losing the sense. It will be noticed that version 1 has the curious word *stramp*, a strengthened form of *tramp*, to trample, tread, used by Lyndsay (see Jamieson). Yet it does not seem to be right, as it does not suit the context.

20. Here we are offered a choice of readings—viz.,

- (1) Keip thi behest one-to thi lord, and thane :
- (2) And keip thy faith thow aw to God and man :
- (3) Thow hald the fast upon thy God and man.

The concluding words (*and thane*) of version 1 can hardly be right, because they require an *alteration* in the refrain or last line, which must begin with *and*, as before. Yet *behest* is probably right, being the old word for 'promise'; *faith* seems to be a translation of it, and *the fast* a substitution for it. And we must read *God* rather than *lord*, to agree with the preceding stanzas. Hence I would read: 'Keip thy behest unto thy God and man.'

GLOSSARIAL INDEX.

IN the following Index, besides the abbreviations *s.* or *sb.*, *a.*, *adv.*, for *substantive, adjective, adverb*, &c., the following are used in a special sense: *v.*, a verb in the infinitive mood; *pr. s.*, present tense, 3d person singular; *pr. pl.*, the same, 3d person plural; *pt. s.*, past tense, 3d person singular; *pt. pl.*, 3d person plural. Other persons are denoted by 1 *p.* and 2 *p.* Also *imp.* is used for the imperative mood, and *pp.* for the past participle. The numbers refer to the stanzas. The references to "J." are to the last edition of Jamieson's Dictionary, 1844 (see further Remarks at the end of this Index, p. 113). The references to Barbour or The Bruce are to my edition of Barbour's Bruce, published for the Early English Text Society in 1870.

A, *prep.* on, in, 20.
A, one, a single, united, 64; A soyte, one livery, 64.
Abaisit, *pp.* abased, humbled, 41;
Abaist, 166. F. *abbaisser*, "to debase, abase, abate, humble, depress, deject;" Cotgrave. J.
Abandon, *adv.* left to myself, 25. Lit. at my free will. "A *bandon*, at large;" Cotgrave. J.
Abate, *s.* discomfiture, surprise, overthrow, 40. From F. *abatre*, "to fell, overthrow, defeat;" Cotgrave. J.
Abit, *pr. s.* abides, awaits, 133. So in Chaucer, C. T. 16643. See below.
Abyde, *imp. s.* abide, wait, 106.
Accident, *s.* incident, 191.
Accord, *v.* agree, 92; *pr. s. subj.* 132.
Adoun, *adv.* down, 53, 88.
Aduert, *v.* turn towards (me), vouchsafe, 25.
Aduertence, control, 108. Lit. power to advert to.
Affray, *s.* fray, struggle, 185.
Affrayde, afraid, 74.

After, according as, 79. See Eftere.
Agane, *adv.* again, 162.
Agane, *prep.* against, 29; Ageyne, opposing, 75.
Agit, aged, 83.
Agone syne, *adv.* long ago, 196.
Airly, *adv.* early, 23, 29.
Alawe, *adv.* down, below, downwards, 35, 154.
Alblastrye, *s.* crossbows and similar weapons; *For a.*, against shot, 156. A collective *sb.* from *alblast*, which is from Lat. *arcubalista*; see *Awblander* in J. See note, p. 87.
Aleyes, *pl.* avenues, 32.
Alight, *pt. pl.* alighted, 61.
All day, *adv.* continually, 87. See note, p. 77.
Allace, *interj.* alas! 43.
Alleris, *gen. pl.* of all, 113. The suffix *-is* is superadded, as in *their-is*, *theirs*, *your-is*, *yours*, *our-is*, *ours*. *Aller* is the A.S. *gen. pl. ealra*, of all.
Allone, alone, 2.
Alluterly, *for* All utterly, all utterly wholly, 129. J.

Als, as, 109, 112.

Amaille, *s.* enamel; *fyre amaille*, fire-enamel, enamel produced by fire, 48. "*Esmail*, amell or enamel;" Cotgrave. J.

Amaisit, *pp.* amazed, in a maze, perplexed, 73.

Amang, *prep.* amongst, 61.

Amang, *adv.* occasionally, at times, 66, 81; Among, 33. So in Barbour.

Amongis, *prep.* amongst, 91.

Amorettis, *pl.* (perhaps) penny-cress, 47. It means something to which a spangle can be likened, and therefore hardly 'love-knots, garlands,' as in J. See note, p. 69.

And, *conj.* if, 161. So in Barbour.

Anewis, *pl.* little rings, 160. Perhaps small twists; it seems as if possibly small buds or knops are intended. O. E. *anel*, *aniau*, a ring; Roquefort. Lat. *anellus*. J.

Anker, anchor, 100.

Anon, *adv.* anon, immediately, 166.

Ape, ape, 155.

Aport, *s.* demeanour, deportment, 50, 177. J.

Appesare, appeaser, pacifier, 99.

Aquarie, Aquarius (sign of the zodiac), 1.

Ar, are, 137.

Araisit, *pp.* raised, 75.

Arest, *s.* stop, 61.

Argewe, *v.* argue (with), 27.

Ariete, Aries, the Ram, 20. See the note, p. 63.

Armony, harmony, 152.

Array, *s.* garb, 110. *Maid of array* means "made of one pattern or garb." Perhaps the right reading was *a ray*, one array.

Artow, 2 *pr.* *s.* art thou, 58, 173,

As, that, 77; Quhare as, where that, 40.

Ase, ass, 154.

Aspectis, *pl.* aspects, 99.

Aspert, 170. Meaning unknown. Jamieson's suggestion, "harsh, cruel," from O. F. *aspere*, is impossible; for the word has a final *t* which cannot be thus accounted for. It might, however, mean "exasperated," formed as a *pp.* from a verb *asperen* = O. F. *asperer* (Cotgrave), to exasperate. See the note. Godefroy gives *aspert* as an occasional spelling of *aperit*, open, noble, bold, also impudent. One difficulty resides in the awkward word *quhar-till*, whereunto.

Aspide, *pp.* spied, 159.

Assay, *s.* trial, attempt, 89; Assayes, *pl.* proofs, trials, 137.

Assure, *v.* assure (myself), be sure, 140.

Astert, *v.* escape, 44; *pt.* *s.* started, 40.

Astonate, *pp.* astonied, 98; Astonait, 162.

At large, *adv.* at liberty, free, 38.

Atonis, at once, 68.

Atoure, *put for* At our, at over, above, 81. J.

Atyre, *s.* attire, 1, 46.

Auance, *v.* prosper, advance, help, help forward, 50, 79, 156.

Aventure, adventure, 22, 79; fortune, 10, 26, 95, 106.

Aught, ought, 120. Read *aughten* for *ought and*; see the note, p. 82.

Auise, *s.* advice, 114; Advise, 22, 150.

Avise, *v.* tell; On avise, tell of, 97.

Awayte, *s.* waiting upon (another), service, 121.

A-werk, at work, 4. Here *a* is for *on*.

Awin, *a.* own, 12, 108.

Aworth, *for* On worth, in worth, worthily, 6. So Tytler, who is quite right. Cf. the numerous examples of *a* for "on," i.e., in, in Stratmann, s.v. *an*.

Axis, accession of sickness, attack of sickness, pain, qualm, 67. A bad spelling of *aces*, i.e., *access*, *accession*, sudden fit of illness. See *axes* in the *Catholicon Anglicum*. It is merely the O. F. *aces*; the etymologies in J. are both of them wrong. "*Acces de fiebure*, a fit of an ague;" Cotgrave.

Ay, *adv.* ever, 11.

Bade, 1 *pt.* *s.* remained, 72.

Balance, *s.* hazard, 142.

Balas, *pl.* balas rubies, 46. Cotgrave gives "*ballay*, a balleys ruby." Named from *Badakhshan*, which lies N. of the river Oxus.

Band, *s.* bond, bondage, 43.

Bare, *s.* bear, 157. (Better spelt *bere*; and *bore*, a boar (156) should rather have been *bare*; see *Bar* in Barbour).

Bataillis, *pl.* battles, 85.

Be, *prep.* by, 20, 127, 139; owing to, 170; Be this day, as at this day, now, 69.

Be, *pp.* been, 175.

Becummin, *pp.* become, 121.

Bedis, *pl.* prayers, 62. J.

Begilit, *pp.* beguiled, 90.

- Begone, *pp.* circumstanced; Wo begone, beset with woe, 30, 103; Wele is vs begone, things have happened well for us, we are well circumstanced, 64. For *uel begone*, see Chaucer, C. T. 6187. It is the *pp.* of *begov*. See examples in Mätzner's Old English Dictionary, p. 235.
- Begonne, *pp.* begun, 34.
- Begouth, 1 *pt.* s. began, 13, 16, 98. J. A false form; see *Begouth* in my Glossary to the Bruce.
- Behalping, *pres. pt.* beholding, 159.
- Behest, s. promise, p. 54, l. 20.
- Bell, bell, 11; Bellis, *pl.* bells (on the dog's collar), 53.
- Beme, s. beam, 151.
- Bene, 2 *pr. pl.* be, 109; *pr. pl.* 111. Put for *ar*, are, which is the *Northern* word.
- Benevolence, good will, encouragement, 108.
- Bere, v. bear, support, 131.
- Beschadit, *pt. pl.* shaded, 32.
- Besid, *adv.* close to, arrived at, 179.
- Best, a. as *sb.* best course, 5.
- Bestly, a. bestial, 136.
- Besynesse, s. activity, 155.
- Bet, *adv.* better, 101.
- Beting, s. beating, correction, 122.
- Beuer, s. beaver, 157.
- Beugh, bough, 35; *pl.* Bewis, 32, 191.
- Bill, s. bill, beak, 178.
- Billis, *pl.* bills, petitions, 82. So in Piers Plowman.
- Birn, 1 *pr. s.* burn, 168; *pres. pt.* Birning, 48.
- Blake, a. black, 161.
- Blamischere, blemisher, 140.
- Blewe, a. blue, 153.
- Blisfull, blisful, 100.
- Blisse, s. bliss, 181.
- Boece, Boethius, 3.
- Bore, s. boar, 156.
- Bore, *pp.* borne, 181.
- Borowe, protection; to *borowe*, as your protection, 23. See the note, p. 64.
- Bot, unless, 69; Bot gif, unless, 132.
- Bot, *prep.* except, 94.
- Bote, boat, 18.
- Brede, breadth, 21. See *Breid* in Barbour.
- Bref, brief, 127.
- Brethir, *pl.* brethren, 184. So in Barbour.
- Brid, bird, 135.
- Bridis, *pl.* brides, 65. See note, p. 73.
- Brukill, a. brittle, 134. Der. from A.S. *broc-en*, *pp.* of *breccan*, to break.
- Brukilnesse, s. frailty, 194. J.
- Bugill, s. ox, 157. See *Bugle* (1) in my Etym. Dict.; and note, p. 88.
- Buket, bucket, 70.
- Busk, bush, 135. So in Barbour.
- But, *prep.* without, 8.
- Bute, remedy, 69. A.S. *bót*.
- Butles, without remedy, 70.
- By, *prep.* with reference to, 16, 70.
- Bydis, *pr. s.* abides, 65.
- Bynd; here *bynd and* (107) is an error for *bunden*, bounden, bound. See the note, p. 79.
- Cace, s. lot, case, 143.
- Cald[e], *adj. pl.* cold, 69.
- Calyope, Calliope, 17.
- Camel, s. camel, 157.
- Can, *pr. s.* knows how to give, 106.
- Can, for Gan, began; *can him to comfort* = did comfort himself, 4.
- Capis, *pl.* capes, 81, 88.
- Capricorne, Capricornus, 1.
- Caris, *pl.* anxieties, woes, 98.
- Carolis, *pl.* carols, 121.
- Cas, case, quiver, 94.
- Cast, 1 *pr. s.* throw a stone, 60.
- Certeayne, a. as *sb.* certainty, 138.
- Cesse, v. cease, remain inactive, 59.
- Chalk, s. chalk, 177.
- Chamberere, chamberlain, 97.
- Chamelot, s. camlet, a stuff, 157. Not connected, etymologically, with the word *camel*. Arab. *khamlat*.
- Chancis, *pl.* adventures, 78.
- Chapellet, chaplet, 97, 160; Chaplet, 95.
- Charge, s. charge, 38; heed, 115.
- Chere, cheer, good cheer, 81; cheerfulness, 36.
- Chiere, s. countenance, 161. See above.
- Chiere, for Chaire, chair, throne, 94. J.
- Chose, s. choice, 92, 147.
- Circulere, a. circular, 1, 196.
- Citherea, error for Cinthia, the moon, 1.
- Clap, 1 *pr. s.* clap, 60.
- Cleo, Clio (muse), 19.
- Clepe, 1 *pr. s.* call, 19; *pr. pl.* 149; Clepit, *pt. s.* 166; Cleping, *pres. pt.* 147; Clepit, *pp.* 3, 112. Used by Chaucer.
- Cleuerith, *pr. s.* clambers, 9; Cleuering, *pres. pt.* clinging, 159. Better spelt *cliver*; it is the frequentative of Icel. *kliſfa*, to climb.
- Clippit, *pp.* embraced, surrounded, 75.
- Cloistere, cloister, 90.

- Clymbare, *a.* climbing, 156.
 Clymben, *v.* climb, 163.
 Come, 1 *pt. s.* came, 29, 158; *pt. s.* 154; *pt. pl.* 61. So *com* in Barbour.
 Commune, common, 147; allied to, 149.
 Commytt, *pp.* committed, 196.
 Compace, *v.* encompass, 141.
 Compacience, *s.* sympathy, 118, 150.
 Compas, space, 96; circuit, 159.
 Compilit, *pp.* compiled, 3.
 Compiloure, compiler, 3.
 Comprisit, *pt. s.* included, comprehended, 28.
 Compt, *ger.* count, p. 54, l. 10.
 Conclusioun, conclusion, determination, 13.
 Condyt, *s.* conductor, 113.
 Confort, *v.* comfort, 4.
 Confort, *s.* comfort, 25, 123.
 Connyng, *a.* skilful, 97; *s.* skill, 18, 50.
 Conquest, *pp.* conquered, 100. See Barbour.
 Consecrat, *pp.* consecrated, 33.
 Consequent, *s.* result, 189.
 Conserue, 2 *pr. s. subj.* keep, 112.
 Constreyne, *v.* constrain, 116.
 Contenance, *s.* demeanour, 45, 50, 82.
 Contraire, *a.* contrary, 144.
 Conueye, *imp. s.* convey, express, 120; Conueide, *pp.* conveyed, 104.
 Conuoye, *v.* guide, 71, 101; Conuoye, Conuoy, *imp. s.* guide, 18, 103; Conuoyit, *pp.* conducted, 189. So in Barbour.
 Conyng, *s.* coney, 157. For *conin*, variant of O. F. *conil*, from Lat. accusative *cuniculum*.
 Copill, couplet, 33.
 Coplit, *pp.* coupled, 92, 93.
 Corage, *s.* courage, 164; heart, 38.
 Couchit, *pp.* arranged, adorned, trimmed, 46. Borrowed from Chaucer, C. T. 2163.
 Couert, 174. *Almost certainly an error for Toward or Toward, prep. as regards.*
 Counterfeten, *v.* counterfeit, imitate, 36; Counterfete, 135.
 Coursis, *pl.* courses, 108.
 Couth, 1 *pt. s.* knew, 16; *pt. s.* could, 196. See Barbour.
 Cowardy, cowardice, 89. Chaucer has *cowardyde*, C. T. 2732.
 Craft, skill, contrivance, 2.
 Cremesye, crimson cloth, 109. F. *cramoisi*; see *cramesye* in J. See *crimson* in my Etym. Dict.
 Cristin, Christian, 142.
 Crokettis, *pl.* small curls, curled knops, 47. Inserted by conjecture; see the note, p. 70.
 Croppin, *pp.* crept; *were croppin*, had crept, 182. Chaucer has *cropen*, C. T. 4257; the verb *to creep*, was once strong. See note, p. 92.
 Crow, crow, 110.
 Crukit, *a.* crooked, 195.
 Cukkow, cuckoo, 110.
 Cum; To cum, to come, future, 107. Sometimes written *locum*, though this is unoriginal and needless.
 Cum, *pp.* come, 192; Cummyyn, *pp.* 185.
 Curage, Courage, 80.
 Curall, *a.* coral, 153. J.
 Cure, *s.* cure, help, 84, 95, 100, 101; care, 22, 38.
 Cure, *v.* cure, heal, 167.
 Cuttis, *pl.* lots, 145. See Chaucer.
 Dance of love, 45. See note, p. 69.
 Dant, *imp. s.* tame, restrain, p. 54, l. 16.
 Darre, 1 *pr. s.* dare, 140.
 Dayes; *now on dayes*, now-a-days, 137.
 Dayesye, daisy, 109 (trisyllabic).
 Decretit, *pp.* decreed, 179. See *decreit*, verb, in J.
 Dedely, *a.* deadly, death-like, 26. J.
 Dedeyne, *pr. s. subj.* deign, 168. So in Barbour.
 Dee, 1 *pr. s.* die, 57. Barbour has *de*.
 Defade, *v.* cause to fade, dispirit, 170. Rare; the *pp. defadide* occurs in the Allit. Morte Arthure, l. 3305.
 Defaute, *s.* defect, 194; Defautis, *pl.* 194. So in Barbour.
 Degoutit, *pp.* spotted, 161. From O. F. *degout*, a drop; Cotgrave.
 Degree, rank, 23.
 Degysit, *pp.* disguised, 81. It occurs in P. Plowman. J.
 Deis, *pr. s.* dies, 52. See Dee.
 Delitable, *a.* delectable, pleasant, 154.
 Delyte, *s.* delight, 41; Delytis, *pl.* pleasures, 6.
 Departing, *pres. pt.* separating, 92; Departit, *pp.* parted, 124.
 Depaynted, *pp.* painted, depicted, 43; Depeyntit, 96. Chaucer has *depeint*, C. T. 12884. J.
 Derrest, dearest, 44. So in Barbour.
 Dert, dirt, 170. [J. is wrong as to this word.]
 Desate, deceit, 135.
 Despeired, *pp.* despairing, 30.

- Determyt, *pp.* determined, 13. J. has the verb *determe*.
- Deuil, devil; *in the twenty deuil way*, in the way of twenty devils, by all possible means, 56. See note, p. 72.
- Deuise, *v.* tell, 12, 73.
- Deuotly, *adv.* devoutly, 62.
- Dewe, *a.* due, 119.
- Deye, *v.* die, 86. See Dee.
- Digne, *a.* worthy, 39, 135.
- Direct, *pp.* directed, 62.
- Dirknesse, darkness, 71.
- Discord, *v.* disagree, 92.
- Discriue, *v.* describe, 16; Discryving, *pres. pt.* 4. J.
- Dispite, spite, malice, 87.
- Displesance, unhappiness, sorrow, 82. J.
- Disport, sport, pleasure, delight, 134.
- Disseurance, separation, 93.
- Ditee, ditty, 36, 62.
- Do, *v.* cause, make, 44, 69; Dois, 2 *pr. s.* dost, 166; Dooth, *pr. s.* makes, 44; Dooth me think, makes me think, 12; Do, *imp. s.* make, 60, 102.
- Doctryne, teaching, instruction, 151. *Thy d.*, instruction of thee.
- Doken, *pl.* docks, burdocks, 109. Here *doken* = A. S. *doccan*, *pl.* of *docca*, a dock (plant). J.
- Dote, *v.* be foolish, be fond, 47.
- Doublinesse, doubtfulness, 18.
- Dout, *s.* fear, 64, 71. So in Barbour.
- Doutfull, *a.* fearful, timorous, 17.
- Draware, *s.* drawer, one who draws, 157.
- Drede, *s.* dread, doubt; *withoutin drede*, without doubt, 130. So in Chaucer and Barbour.
- Dredefull, *a.* timorous, 126. So in Ch. C. T. 1481.
- Dremes, *pl.* dreams, 174.
- Dresse, *v.* direct, turn, 156; Dressit, *pt. s.* prepared, 175; *pt. pl.* addressed, 153; Drest, *pp.* ill-treated, afflicted, 173. With the last passage compare the phrase 'to give one a dressing.'
- Dromydare, *s.* dromedary, 156.
- Druggare, *s.* drudge, drudger; *as a.* drudging, 155. J.
- Dure, door, 75.
- Ecclesiaste, Ecclesiastes, 133.
- Effectis, *pl.* effects, influences, 146.
- Effray, *s.* terror, p. 54, l. 4.
- Eft, *adv.* again, 10, 53.
- Efter, *adv.* afterwards, 181.
- Eftere, *prep.* after, 3, 64; in hope of, 104. *Eftir* in Barbour.
- Eftsonne, *adv.* very soon, 159.
- Eke, *adv.* also, 173.
- Elk, *s.* elk, 156.
- Ellis, *adv.* otherwise, else, 59, 63; Elles, 39.
- Embroudin, *pp.* embroidered, *i.e.*, decked, 152. A false form; the verb is weak. Read *embroudi*; cf. Chaucer, Prol. 89.
- Emeraut, *s.* emerald, 46.
- Enditing, *pres. pt.* enditing, 7.
- Enditing, *s.* inditing, 18.
- Endlang, *adv.* along, 167.
- Endlang, *prep.* along, beside, 152; Endlong, along, 81. So in Barbour.
- Enprise, enterprise, 20. J. says 'exertion of power,' which is probably meant. See *Enpris* in Barbour.
- Ensample, example, reason, 148.
- Ensured, *pp.* made sure, 9.
- Entent, intent, intention, 13, 56, 190.
- Entere, *a.* entire, 62.
- Ere, *s.* ear, 172.
- Ermyne, *s.* ermine, 157, 161.
- Esperus, Hesperus, the evening-star, 72.
- Est, east, 20.
- Estate, high rank, 3, 50; royalty, 94.
- Euerichone, every one, 64.
- Euour, *a.* ivory, 155. J.
- Evin, *adv.* even, just, 21.
- Evinly, *adv.* exactly, 177.
- Evyn, *adv.* even; *apoun so litill evyn*, upon even so little, 182. See Evin.
- Exile, 1 *pr. s.* banish, 117.
- Exiltree, axle-tree, 189.
- Extendit, *pt. s.* extended, 151.
- Eyen, *pl.* eyes, 8; Een, p. 54, l. 17.
- Facture, *s.* shape, 50; mien, 66. "Facture, the facture, workmanship, framing of a thing;" Cotgrave. The same word as E. *feature*. The old editions have *facture*, but the MS. has *facture*.
- Fader, father, 122.
- Faille, *v.* fail (of), lose, 26.
- Faille, *s.* doubt, 48.
- Fair, *a.* as *sb.* fair fortune, 190; Faire, fair one, 66.
- Fair-calling, Salutation, Fair-welcome, 97. See the note, p. 78.
- Fallyng, *pp.* fallen, 164.
- Falowe, fellow, companion, 23.
- Fand, 1 *pt. s.* found, 77, 79, 125, 154. A. S. *fand*, *pp.* of *findan*.

- Fantasye, fancy, 11, 37.
 Fantise, *s.* feigning, dissembling, 142.
 "Faintise, dissembling, hypocrisy;" Cotgrave.
 Fatoure, deceiver, 135. O. F. *faiteor*, from Lat. *factorem*, a doer, maker, agent. Hence it took up the sense of pretender, impostor. Spelt *fatour* in P. Plowman.
 Faucht, *pt. pl.* (who) fought, 85.
 Fay, *s.* faith, 59. O. F. *fei*, F. *foi*.
 Faynest, *adv.* most gladly, 195.
 Faynt, *pp.* feigned, 141.
 Fell, *a.* cruel, 56, 100.
 Felonye, *s.* evil-doing, 102; cruelty, 156. J.
 Fer, *adv.* far, 22; Ferre, 45.
 Fere, *s.* companion, mate, 155. A.S. *gefēra*.
 Fer-forth, *adv.* far forward, 25.
 Fery, *a.* active, 156. J. Not 'fiery,' as Tytler explains it. It is merely from Icel. *farr*, able, strong, used rather in the original sense of active, "full of go," formed from *för*, *pt. a.* of *fara*, to go.
 Fest, fast; to *fest*, too fast, very fast, 61.
 Fetheris, *pl.* feathers, 35.
 Feynit, *pp.* feigned, 36.
 Figuris, *pl.* figures, 28. See note, p. 65.
 Flawe, 1 *pt. s.* flew, 61.
 Flikering, *pres. pt.* fluttering, 173.
 Floure-lonettis, *pl.* flowers of the great St John's wort, 47. This appears from the description of the plumes; see note, p. 70. "*Faulnetie*, hardway, St Peter's wort, square S. Johns grasse, great S. Johns wort;" Cotgrave. From O. F. *jaulne*, yellow.
 Flourith, *pr. s.* flourishes, 133, 193; Flourit, *pp.* flourished, *i.e.*, flowery, ornate, 4.
 Flude, flood, 20.
 Fonde, *v.* endeavour to obtain, 127. A.S. *fandian*.
 Fone, *pl.* foes, 71. A.S. *fūn*, *pl.* of *fū*, foe.
 For, *prep.* as a defence against, 156.
 For examples of this use, see P. Plowman, C. 9. 59. So in Chaucer's Sir Thopas, we find "for percinge of his herte."
 For, *conj.* because, 116.
 Forby, *adv.* by, past, 30, 31. J.
 Forehede, forehead; Thy forehede, thy face, *i.e.*, thyself, 106.
 Foreknawin, *pp.* foreknown; *f. is*, is aware beforehand, 148.
 Foreknawing, *s.* foreknowledge, 149.
 Forfait, *pp.* forfeited, 141.
 Forfet, misdeed, 92; mischance, 129.
 Forget, *pp.* forgotten, 120. A.S. *for-geten*, *pp.* of *for-gitan*.
 Forgit, *pp.* wrought, fashioned, 47; forged, 94.
 Foriugit, *pp.* condemned, 3. "*For-juger*, to judge or condemn wrongfully;" Cotgrave.
 Forlyin, *pp.* weary with lying in bed, 12. See note, p. 80.
 Forpleynit, *pp.* exhausted with complaining, 73. J.
 Forquhy, wherefore, 108; because, 41.
 Forsake, *imp. s.* refuse, shrink from, 63; Forsuke, *pt. pl.* denied, 89.
 Forthir, further, 99, 190.
 Forthir-more, furthermore, 114.
 For-tirit, *pp.* wearied, tired, 30.
 Fortunyt, *pt. s.* it happened, 191; *pp.* gifted by fortune, 133.
 For-wakit, *pp.* tired out with waking, 11. J.
 For-walowit, *pp.* tired with tossing about, 11. See p. 61.
 Forwepit, *pp.* exhausted with weeping, 73. J.
 Foting, *s.* footing, 9.
 Foynzee, *s.* beech-marten, 157. "*Fouinne*, the foine, wood-martin, or beech-martin;" Cotgrave. J.
 Fremyt, *a.* strange, unfortunate, unlucky, 24. J. A.S. *fremede*, estranged from.
 Fret, *pt. pl.* adorned, 35. A.S. *fræt-wan*, to adorn.
 Fret-wise, in fashion of adornment, 46.
 Fricht, *pp.* frightened, 162.
 Fro, *prep.* from, 52, 173.
 Froward, *a.* froward (people), 170.
 Fude, food, 30.
 Fundin, *pp.* found, 169.
 Furrit, *pp.* furred, 161.
 Furth, *adv.* forth, away, 67; thenceforward, 13.
 Furth, *prep.* forth, beyond, 158.
 Furthward, *adv.* forward, 17.
 Furth-with-all, furthermore, 13.
 Fynnis, *pl.* fins, 153.
 Game, *s.* amusement, hence happiness, pleasure, 17.
 Gan, 1 *pt. s.* did, 10, 42; *pt. pl.* Gan to smert, did smart, 8.
 Gardyng, *s.* garden, 33.
 Gayte, *s.* goat, 156. Icel. *geit*.

- Gerafloure, *s.* gillyflower, 190. "*Girofle*, a gilloflower; and most properly, the clove gilloflower;" Cotgrave. See *Ioroffis*.
- Gesserant, *s.* a coat or cuirass of fine mail, 153. "*Faseran*, a coate or shirt of great and close-woven maile;" Cotgrave. See *Faserans* in Roquefort, and *Gesseraunte* in Halliwell.
- Geue, *v.* give, 172; Gevis, *pr. s.* gives, 115; Gevin, *pp.* given, 92.
- Geve, *conj.* if, 195. Bad spelling of *gif*.
- Gif, *if*, 28, 60; Giff, 141; *badly spelt* Geve, 195.
- Gilt, *s.* guilt, 56, 137.
- Gilt, *pp.* sinned, 26, 38. A.S. *gyltan*.
- Girt, *pp.* girded, 49.
- Glad, *v.* gladden, 174; Glade, 62.
- Glad, *s.* gladness, 21.
- Glewis, *pl.* destinies, 160. Supplied by me to fill up the line, which is left imperfect. *Glew* means 'fortune of war' in Barbour, 6. 658. This is just what is meant.
- Glitteren, *pr. pl.* glitter, 189.
- Goddess, *pl.* gods (*perhaps* goddesses, *the accent being on the latter syllable*), 111; Goddis, gods, 123.
- Gone, *v.* go, advance, 131; walk about, 103; *pp.* past, 107.
- Goste, *s.* spirit, 173.
- Gouernance, *s.* control, influence, 122; conduct, 88, 130.
- Graip, *imp.* *s.* feel your way, p. 54, l. 19.
- Gree, degree, rank, 83; victory, 59; Greis, *pl.* degrees, 21. J.
- Gref, grief, 127.
- Gres, *s.* grass, p. 54, l. 11.
- Greuance, grief, 118.
- Grey, *s.* gray, badger, 156. J.
- Grippis, *pl.* grips, grasp, 171.
- Ground, foundation, 6.
- Ground, 2 *pr. s.* subj. found, 142; Groundit, *pp.* grounded, 138.
- Gruch[en], *pr. pl.* complain, repine, 91. J.
- Grundyn, *pp.* ground, sharpened, 94.
- Gude, *s.* goods, 139.
- Gude, *a.* good, 20.
- Gudeliare, *adj. comp.* goodlier, 49.
- Gudelihede, *s.* fairness, beauty, 49.
- Guerdoun, *s.* guerdon, 193.
- Gyde, *s.* guide, 113; Gyd, 195.
- Gyde, *v.* guide, 15.
- Gye, *v.* guide, 15, 106.
- Gynneth, *pr. s.* begins, 17; Gynnis, 2 *pr. s.* beginnest, *hence* dost, 57; Gynnen, *pr. pl.* begin, do, 119.
- Hable, *a.* able, fit, liable, 14; powerful, 99. J.
- Hable, *v.* enable, 39.
- Hailith, *pr. s.* hales, draws, 70. J.
- Hailsing, *pres. pt.* saluting; greeting, 166. See *Hailsed* in additions to J.
- Haire, *s.* hare, 156.
- Hald, 1 *pr. s.* hold, 60; Halden, *pr. pl.* maintain, 147; Haldin, *pp.* kept, 90.
- Hale, *a.* as *adv.* wholly, 58, 74, 101, 122.
- Hale, *v.* haul, pull, 169.
- Halely, *adv.* wholly, 188.
- Halfdel, *for* Half del, half part, half, partly, 89.
- Halflyng, *adv.* partly, 49. J.
- Hand; In his hand, held by the hand, 79.
- Hang, *pt. s.* hung, 48; *pt. pl.* 81, 94. See Hingen.
- Hap, *s.* good fortune, 133.
- Hapnit, *pt. s.* happened, befell, 187.
- Happily, *adv.* haply, perchance, 59.
- Hardy, hardy, stout, 89.
- Hare, *s.* hair, 157.
- Has, *pl.* have, 107; Hastow, hast thou, 57.
- Haunt, *s.* lair, 156.
- Havin, haven, 100.
- Hed, head, 160; Hedis, *pl.* heads, 79, 80.
- Hedit, headed, 95.
- Hele, *s.* health, healing, cure, 74, 169, 191.
- Helle, *s.* hell, 162.
- Henn[es]furth, henceforth, 69; Hen[n]esfurth, 144; Hen[n]esferth, 181.
- Hent, 1 *pt. s.* seized, 180.
- Herbere, garden for herbs and flowers, garden-plot or bed, 31, 32. Janieson says, "it would seem that it is used for arbour by James I." Certainly not; no arbour is ever planted with junipers. From Lat. *herbarium*, through the French.
- Here, *imp.* *s.* hear, 148.
- Herknere, *s.* used as *a.*, listening, 156. See note, p. 88.
- Hert, *s.* heart, 40.
- Hert, *s.* hart, 157.
- Hertly, *a.* cordial, 121; *adv.* heartily, 144.
- Hes, *pr. s.* has, p. 54, l. 16.
- Hestis, *pl.* behests, commands, 112.
- Heved, *pt. s.* heaved, uplifted, 1.

Hevynnis, *pl.* heavens, joys, 34.
 Hewis, *s. pl.* colours, hues, 160.
 Heye, high, valuable, 110; loud, loudly, 66.
 Hicht, *s.* height, raising, 172.
 Hider, *adv.* hither, 166.
 Him, *dat.* on him, 6.
 Hingen, *pr. pl.* hang, 88. See Hang.
 Hippit, *pt. pl.* hopped, 35. J.
 Ho, *interj.* ho! stop! 157. *I.e.*, he never stays 'stop' to murder. J.
 Hole, *a.* whole, 18, 126; *s.* 171.
 Holsum, *a.* wholesome, 156.
 Hong, *pt. s.* hung, 160. See Hingen, Hang.
 Hony, *a.* sweet as honey, 117.
 Hore, hoary, 80, 83.
 Hornis, *pl.* horns, 157; (of the moon), 1.
 Hortis, *pl.* hurts, wounds, 156. See note, p. 88. J. gives *hort*, *v.* to hurt.
 Hound, *s.* hound, dog, 53.
 Hudis, *pl.* hoods, 81, 88.
 Hufing, *pres. pt.* hovering about, dwelling, 159. See *hove* in J.
 Huke, *s.* frock, dress, 49. "Huke, *surquanie, froc*;" Palsgrave. Cotgrave explains *surquenie* or *souquenie* by "frock, gaberline." Skelton has it, in *Elymour Rummyng*, l. 56.
 Humily, *adv.* humbly, 106, 176.
 Humynesse, humility, 126.
 Hyare, higher, 131.
 Hye, *a.* high; Hye way, highway, 154.
 Hye, haste; *only in phr.* In hyc, in haste (very common in The Bruce), 30, 75, 77, 158, 171, 177.
 Hye, *v.* hasten, hie; 15, 164.
 Hyndrit, *pp.* hindered, 137.
 Hyng, *pr. pl.* hang, 89. See Hingen, Hang, Hong.
 I-, *prefix*; used in the *pt. t.* Iblent, and in the *pp.* I-fallyng, I-laid, I-lokin, I-thankit, I-wone. This prefix is unknown to the Northern dialect, and due to imitation of Chaucer. Other examples are Ybete, &c.; see V-, *prefix*.
 Iangill, *v.* jangle, talk, 38.
 Iblent, *pt. s.* became blinded, 74. See note, p. 74.
 Ielousye, jealousy, 87.
 Ienepere, *s.* juniper, 32.
 Iete, *s.* jet, 157.
 I-fallyng, *pp.* fallen, 45. Put for I-fallyn.
 Ilaid, *pp.* laid, 120.
 Ilk, *a.* same, 163; Ilke, 154.

Illusioun, illusion, 12.
 Ilokin, *pp.* locked, enclosed, 69. See Lokin.
 Impnis, *pl.* hymns, poems, 196. See Ympnis.
 Incidence, incidental matter, 7.
 Indigest, *pp.* undigested, crude, 14.
 Inemye, *s.* enemy, 156; Inymys, *pl.* 24.
 Infelicittee, misfortune, 4.
 Infortunate, *a.* unfortunate, 24.
 Infortune, misfortune, 5, 45.
 Inmytee, enmity, 87.
 Iorofflis, *pl.* gilly-flowers, 178. See Gerafloure.
 I-thankit, *pp.* thanked, 190.
 Iuge, judge, 82.
 Iunyt, *pp.* joined, 133. J.
 I-wone, *pp.* won, 108.
 Kalendis, *pl.* Kalends, beginnings, 34, 177. See note, p. 67.
 Kepe, 1 *pr. s.* care for, regard, 141.
 Kest, 1 *pt. s.* cast, 35, 40; *pt. s.* 104.
 Keye, key, 100. But he means 'helm.' On this curious error, see the note.
 Kid, *pp.* made known, manifested, 137. Spelt *kydd* in J. Used as *pp.* of *kythe*.
 Knawe, *v.* know, 128.
 Knawing, *s.* knowledge; *tofore knawing*, knowledge beforehand, foreknowledge, 148.
 Knytt, *v.* strengthen, 194; Knet, *pp.* knit, twined, 31.
 Kynd, *s.* kind, nature, 27, 35, 139.
 Kythit, *pp.* manifested, shewn, 56. See Kid.; A.S. *cythan*, to make known.
 Lak, *s.* want, 15.
 Lakkith, 1 *pr. s.* lack, 27. An error for *lakkis*, the Northumbrian form; see the note. Lakit, 1 *pt. s.* lacked, 16; Lakkit, *pt. s.* lacked, 84.
 Lampis, *pl.* lamps, i.e., stars, 72.
 Lang, long, 73; Langer, *adv.* longer, 10, 11, 68.
 Langis, *pr. s.* belongs, 106, 107; Langith (Southern form), belongs (to), 114. J.
 Lanternis, *pl.* lanterns, 19.
 Lap, *pt. pl.* leapt, 153.
 Largesse, *s.* bounty, 50; liberty, 183; Larges, liberty, 181. J.
 Lat, 1 *pr. s.* let, 7, 187; *imp. s.* 99.
 Latting, *s.* letting, 41.
 Lauch, *imp. s.* laugh, 179.
 Laud, *s.* praise, 188.

- Laureate, *a.* laureate, 197.
 Lawe, low, 90; below, 103.
 Layes, *pl.* lays, 85.
 Lede, *s.* lead, 153.
 Lemying, *pres. pt.* shining brightly, 46. From A.S. *loma*, a ray of light. (Not allied to *gleam*, as J. wrongly supposes.)
 Lent, 1 *pt.* *s.* leaned, 42, 73, 74, 191.
 Lenth, length, 21.
 Lere, *v.* learn, 171. (Misused; the M.E. *leren* means to teach.)
 Lest, *s.* pleasure, desire, 57. J.
 Lest, *pr. s. impers.* it pleases, 9; *pt. s. impers.* pleased it, 44; *pr. s. subj. impers.* may please, 147. J.
 Leste, least, 149.
 Lestnyt, 1 *pt. s.* listened, 11.
 Lesty, *a.* skilful, 157. J. has *list*, agile. From A.S. *list*, art. See *liste* in Stratmann.
 Lete, *pt. s.* let, 125. See Lat.
 Let[te], *v.* hinder, stop, 113.
 Leue, *s.* leave, 124.
 Likit, *pt. s. impers.* it pleased, 7, 126.
 List, *impers. pr. s.* it pleases, 78, 101; *pr. s.* is pleased, 25, 34; *pr. pl.* are pleased, 115; 2 *pr. s.* art pleased, 58.
 List, *s.* edge, border, 178. "*Liste*, a list, or selvedge;" Cotgrave.
 Long, *a.* long, 160.
 Lokin, *pp.* locked, enclosed, 135. A.S. *locen*, *pp.* of the strong verb *lucan*. See *llokin*.
 Lore, instruction, knowledge, 111, 128, 149; learning, 181.
 Louring, *adj.* frowning, 161. See additions to J.
 Louse, *a.* loose, 49, 115.
 Louse, *v.* loosen, 39, 43.
 Lowe, *s.* flame, fire, 48. Icel. *log*. J.
 Lufar, *s.* lover, 179; Lufare (see note, p. 87), 155.
 Luhs, *s. gen.* love's, 45.
 Luke, *s.* glance, 51.
 Luke[n], *v.* look, 170; Lukit, *pp.* looked, given heed, 25.
 Lust, *s.* pleasure, delight, dear one, 65.
 Lusty, *a.* pleasant, 121. J.
 Lyf, person, 12. See Lyvis.
 Lyght, *v.* alight, 177.
 Lynx, 155. See note, p. 87.
 Lyonesse, *s.* lioness, 155.
 Lyoun, *s.* lion, 155.
 Lyte, *a.* little, 13, 120; A lyte, a little, loosely, 49; *as sb.* little, 16, 161; little while, 2, 41. A.S. *lyt*. See *Lite* in J.
 Lyue, life; On lyue, alive, lit. 'in life,' 84.
 Lyvand, *pres. pt.* living, 197.
 Lyvis, *s. gen.* being's, man's, 28. See *Lyf*.
 Mach, match, 109.
 Magnificence, *s.* greatness, 196.
 Maidenhede, maidenhood, virginity, 55.
 Maist, *adv.* most, 120, 182.
 Maister, master, 125.
 Maistrit, *pp.* mastered, overpowered, 181.
 Maistry, *s.* dominion, mastery, 59; Maistrye, power, 37; By m., by force, 92; For m., as a masterpiece, 66.
 Make, mate, companion, 58, 79; Makis, *pl.* 35, 64, 86. J.
 Naked, *pp.* made, 110.
 Man, lover, 63, 101, 187.
 Menace, *s.* threat, menace, 41; Doith menace, offers menace to, threatens, 96.
 Maner, *s.* kind, sort (of), 161.
 Mantill, *s.* mantle, 160.
 Marciall, *a.* Martial, *i.e.*, of the month of March, 191. See note, p. 93.
 Martrik, *s.* marten, martin, 157. J.
 Marye, *gen.* Mary's, 17.
 Mate, *s.* checkmate, 169.
 Mate, *v.* to be checkmated, 168.
 Mater, matter, circumstance, 18.
 Matyns, *pl.* matins, 11.
 Maugre, *adv.* in spite of (us), 24.
 May, *pr. s.* is able, is of might (to do harm), p. 54, l. 16.
 Melling, *s.* interference, 145. J.
 Mellit, *pp.* mingled, 152. J. From O. F. *mesler*.
 Mene, *s.* mean, means, 183; Menes, *pl.* means, 111; Menys, 192.
 Menen, *pr. pl.* mean, 137.
 Merci, mercy, 34.
 Merciable, merciful, 99.
 Mesure, *s.* measure, moderation, 50, 51, 132.
 Met, 1 *pt. s.* dreamt, 73. A.S. *mētan*.
 Mete, *a.* meet, fit, 97.
 Metir, metre, 4.
 Mich, *a.* much, 51, 150.
 Mineruis, *gen.* Minerva's, 124.
 Minister, *v.* administer, perform, 43.
 Mo, *adj. pl.* more (in number), besides, 42, 61, 97, 111, 157. A.S. *mā*.
 Moch, much; To m., too much, excess, 87.

- Mone, moon, 110.
 Mone, moan, plaint, 72. See Moon.
 Monethis, *pl.* months, 65.
 Monyfold, manifold, a great deal, 131.
 Moon, *s.* moan, complaint, 45. See Mone.
 Moralitee, *s.* morality, 4, 197.
 Mornis, *pl.* mornings, 29.
 Morowe, *s.* morning, 49; A morow, in the morning, 20.
 Mot, *pr. s. subj.* may, 190; Mote, *imp.* 3 *p.* may (He), 71; Most, must, 15.
 Moving, *pres. pt.* considering, 177.
 Murn, *v.* mourn, 113; Murnyth, *pr. pl.* 118.
 Murthir, *s.* murder, 157.
 My, of me; My disdeyne, disdain of me, 115. A.S. *min*, gen. of *ic*, I.
 Mylioun, million, 78.
 Mynd, remembrance, 2; memory, 85; Mynde, remembrance, 58, 151.
 Mynes, *for* Menes, *pl.* means, 107.
 Mynt, 1 *pr. s.* aim, 105. A.S. *myntan*, to determine, intend. See *mint* in J.

 Na, not, 67.
 Namly, *adv.* especially, 10.
 Nap, *v.* take a nap, nod, sleep, 60.
 Nas, *for* Ne was, was not, 75.
 Nat, not, 10.
 Nay, nay, i.e., otherwise, not so, 89.
 Necessitee, necessity, 146.
 Nest, *s.* nest, 173.
 Newe, *adv.* newly, 8.
 Newis, *pl.* news, 179.
 Noblay, *s.* nobility, p. 54, l. 2. See note, p. 95.
 Nothing, in no respect, 90.
 Nouthir, neither, 139.
 Nowmer, number, 19, 22, 81. J.
 Nyce, *a.* foolish, 129; full of tricks, 155. See *Nice* in J.
 Nycely, *a.* foolishly, 12.
 Nye, nigh, 77.
 Nyl, 1 *pr. s.* will not, 142.

 O, one, a single, 182.
 Observance, *s.* observance, due regard, 119.
 Of, *prep.* of, by, 52; by means of, 108; from, out of, 93; upon, 129; with, 95; Off, by, 24; Off, from, 23.
 Offense, offence, 38.
 Oliphant, *s.* elephant, 156. J.
 Omere, Homer, 85.
 On, *prep.* on, with, 33. *Perhaps we should read of.*

 One, alone; By thame one, alone by themselves, 80.
 Ones, *adv.* once, 57.
 Ony, any, 8, 67. J.
 Opnyt, *pt. pl.* opened, 21.
 Opposit, (people) opposed (to you), 170.
 Or, *adv.* ere, 180, 190; Or euer, ere ever, 5.
 Ordour, *s.* order, 125.
 Orfeurye, *s.* goldsmith's work, 48. "*Orfeverie*, the goldsmith's trade or work;" Cotgrave.
 Orisoun, orison, 53.
 Ornate, *a.* flowery, 197.
 Ouer, *prep.* besides, 61.
 Ouercom, *pp.* overcome, 41.
 Ouerthrawe, *pp.* overthrown, 163.
 Ouerthwert, *adv.* across, 82, 167. Spelt *ourthort* in J.
 Ouerwent, *pp.* pervaded, 74.
 Oure, *prep.* over, above, 143. See Ouer.
 Oure-hayle, *v.* overhaul, reconsider, 10; Oure-hailing, *pres. pt.* considering, 158.
 Oure-straught, *pp.* stretched across, 164.
 Ourset, *pp.* overset, upset, 73. J.
 Out of, after, 4.

 Pace, *s.* step, hence, a layer or stage in building, 131.
 Pace, *v.* pass away, 69. See note; and see Pas.
 Pall, *v.* appal, amaze, make dull, 18. Short for *appal*.
 Pantere, *s.* panther, 155.
 Pape-lay, popinjay, parrot, 110. J.
 Part, *v.* depart, 67; Partit, *pp.* awaked, 2.
 Partye, *s.* match, bride, 48 (see note, p. 71); In partye, partly, 16.
 Pas, *v.* pass, go, 22. See Pace.
 Paynis, *pl.* pains, 181.
 Peire, *v.* pair; To peire with, to pair off with, to compare to, 110. See note, p. 80.
 Pennance, *s.* penance, 176.
 Pepe, *interj.* peep! cry of a bird, 57.
 Percyng, *pres. pt.* piercing, 103; sharp-sighted, 155.
 Perfyte, perfect, 125.
 Perill, pearl, 110; Perillis, *pl.* 46.
 Perseuerance, *s.* perseverance, 185.
 Pertene, *pr. s. subj.* pertain, 107.
 Pertynent, *a.* pertinent, pertaining, 138.
 Phebus, the sun, 72.

- Philomene, nightingale, 62; *Phylomene*, 110.
 Pitouse, piteous, 118.
 Pitously, *adv.* piteously, 53, 73.
 Plane, *s.* plain, 152.
 Planet, planet, 99.
 Playntis, *pl.* complaints, 82, 92.
 Plesance, pleasure, 26; happiness, 93; delightful appearance, 82 (cf. 90). *J.*
 Plesandly, *adv.* pleasantly, 178. *J.*
 Pleyne, *a.* plain, evident, 116.
 Pleyne, *v.* play, disport, 40. Put for Pleyen, Southern infinitive of *play*.
 Pleyne, *ger.* to complain, 90; 1 *pr. s.* complain, 70.
 Plumys, *pl.* plumes, 46.
 Plumyt, *pp.* plumed, feathered, 94.
 Plyte, *s.* plight, 53.
 Poetly, *a.* poetlike, poetical, 4.
 Polymye, Polyhymnia, 19.
 Porpapyne, *s.* porcupine, 155.
 Port, gate, 77; harbour, 17.
 Portare, porter, 125.
 Pouert, poverty, 3, 5.
 Poure, *v.* pore, gaze, 72.
 Poynt, *s.* point; In poynt, on the point of, 168.
 Prattily, *adv.* prettily, 153.
 Pray, prey, 135.
 Prentisshed, apprenticeship, 185.
 Presence, *s.* presence, 195. See note, p. 93.
 Present, *a.* present, 106.
 Present, *pt. s.* presented, 179.
 Prime, *s.* the prime hour of the day, 9 o'clock in the morning, 171.
 Princes, princess, 99, 141.
 Prise, *s.* praise, 128, 188. See *priss* in additions to *J.*
 Proesse, procedure, course of things, 126; course of time, 114, 143, 192; procedure, 19.
 Procure, *v.* procure, 127. See note, p. 83.
 Froigne, Frogne (turned into a swallow), 55.
 Prolixitee, prolixity, 18.
 Proyne, 1 *pr. pl.* preen, trim our wings, 64. *J.*
 Prye, *v.* pry, peer, gaze about, 72.
 Purchace, *v.* obtain, 59, 184.
 Pure, poor, 99, 101.
 Purpose, *s.* purpose, 158.
 Puruait, *pp.* purveyed, provided, 23.
 Purueyance, providence, 130, 192; Puruance, 176.
 Pykit, *pp.* adorned, 7. Chaucer has *piketh*, trims, C. T. 9885; see Way's note in Prompt. Parv., p. 397.
 Pyne, *s.* pain, trouble, 155, 173, 175. *J.*
 Pynnit, *pp.* fastened, 180.
 Quair, book, title (page 3). O. F. *quaier*, spelt *quayer*, *cayer* in Cotgrave, mod. F. *cahier*, mod. E. *quire*. See *Quire* in my Etym. Dict.
 Quaking, *pres. pt.* shaking, 47.
 Quhar, where, 17; Quhare, 58; Quhartill, whereunto, 170; Quhare [vn]to, to what purpose, 68. *J.*
 Quhele, *s.* wheel, 9, 159. See *quheill* in additions to *J.*
 Quhen, when, 2. *J.*
 Quich, which, 3. A bad form of *quhilk*, which is the proper Northern form.
 Quhile, *s.* while, time, 2. *J.*
 Quhilk, *pron.* which, 180; Quhilkis, *pl.* 61. *J.*
 Quhill, until, 108; whilst, p. 54, l. 12.
 Quhilom, *adv.* once upon a time, formerly, 3; Quhilum, once, 88. *J.*
 Quirling, *s.* whirling, 165.
 Quhirlit, *pp.* whirled, 189.
 Quhislith, *pr. s.* whistles, 135.
 Quhite, *a.* white, 46, 96.
 Quho, *pron.* who, 57; whosoever, 78, 162, 182; As quho sais, as if one should say, 77; Quhois, *gen.* whose, 56, 70.
 Quhy, why, 81; as *sb.* reason why, reason, 87, 93. *J.*
 Quikin, *v.* quicken, 181.
 Quit, *pp.* requited, 128; released, 6; Quite, as *adj.* quit, 195. *J.*
 Quoake, *pt. s.* quaked, 162. *J.*
 Quyt, *imp. s.* requite, p. 54, l. 7.
 Railit, *pp.* railed, 31.
 Rancoure, ill will, 117.
 Range, *s.* range, 158.
 Rase, 1 *pt. s.* rose, 11.
 Ravin, *a.* ravenous, 157. *J.*
 Rawe, *s.* row, 154; On rawe, in a row, 90. *J.*
 Recouurance, recovery, 87.
 Recounsilit, *pp.* reconciled, restored to their loves, 90.
 Reconforting, *s.* comforting again, 176. *J.*
 Recure, *s.* recovery, 10, 95; Recouer, 5. *J.*
 Red, *v.* read, 196.
 Reder, *s.* reader, 194.
 Reherse, rehearsal, 127.
 Rele, *v.* roll, turn (it) round, 9; roll, 165. *J.*

- Relesch, *v.* relax, assuage, 184. "*Relascher*, to slacken, ease, refresh, remit;" Cotgrave.
- Relesche, *s.* relaxation, ease, 25, 150, 176. "*Relasche*, a relaxation, ease, rest, repose, refreshment, truce, intermission;" Cotgrave.
- Remanant, *s.* remnant, 137, 171. *Remanand* in Barbour.
- Remede, remedy, 69, 138. J.
- Remufe, *v.* remove, be removed, 188.
- Remyt, *s.* excuse, forgiveness, 195.
- Renewe, *s.* renewal, 125. Cf. *reherse* = rehearsal.
- Repaire, *s.* concourse, 77. J.
- Report, narrative, 4. J.
- Requere, *imper. s.* pray, ask, 195. "*Requerir*, to request, intreat, beseech;" Cotgrave.
- Resident, *pres. pt.* dwelling, residing, 115.
- Ressaue, *v.* receive, 123; Ressauen, *pr. pl.* receive, 145; Ressaut, *pp.* received, 52, 84.
- Rethorike, *s.* rhetoric, 196.
- Rethorikly, *adv.* rhetorically, 7.
- Retrete, retreat, 96.
- Retrograde, *a.* backward, 170.
- Reule, *v.* rule, 15; Reulen, 194.
- Reuth, *s.* pity, 137.
- Rew, *v.* have pity (on), 63; *imp. s.* 101. J.
- Reyne, rain, 116.
- Riall, *a.* royal, 125, 157. J.
- Ro, *s.* roe, 157.
- Rody, *a.* ruddy, 1.
- Rold, *pp.* rolled, 163.
- Rong, *pt. pl.* rang, 33.
- Ronne, *pp.* run, 108; Bludy ronne, run over with blood, 55.
- Rose, *s.* the rose, emblem of beauty, 186. See note. p. 92.
- Rought, *pt. s.* recked, 27. See *Roucht* in J.
- Rout, *s.* troop, shoal, 153.
- Rowm, *a.* roomy, spacious, 77. A.S. *rim*, adj. J.
- Rude, rood, cross, 139. J.
- Rudenes, rudeness, 49.
- Rut, *s.* root, p. 54, l. 3.
- Ruyn, ruin, 28.
- Ryfe, rife, common, 121.
- Rygh[e], *a.* direct, 75.
- Rynnis, *pr. s.* runs, passes, 171. J.
- Rynsid, *pt. s.* rinsed, laved, purified, 1.
- Sable, *s.* sable, 157.
- Said, said (?), 125. But perhaps an error for *sad*, i.e., grave, serious.
- Sall, 1 *pr. s.* shall, must, 43, 45; 2 *pr. s.* shalt, 128. J.
- Salute, 1 *pt. s.* saluted, 98.
- Sanctis, *pl.* saints, 191. J.
- Saphire, sapphire, 46.
- Sauf, safe; Hir worschip sauf, save her honour, 143.
- Saulis, *pl.* souls, 123. J.
- Schape, *v.* prepare, provide, 69. J.
- Schede, *pp.* shed, 117.
- Schene, *a.* bright, 95, 107, 110. J. A.S. *schene*.
- Schet, 1 *pt. s.* shut, 8. J.
- Schill, *a.* shrill, 66. J.
- Schire, *a.* clear, bright, shining, 76. J.
- Schuldris, *pl.* shoulders, 96, 160. J.
- Schupe, *pt. s.* shaped, destined, 24. So in Barbour.
- Scole, *s.* scull, head, 7. Not 'school,' as Tytler supposed. "Cranium, *scolle*;" Wright's *Vocabularies*, vol. i. p. 179, l. 5.
- Secrete, secrecy, 97.
- See, *s.* sea, 22.
- Seldin, *adv.* seldom, 9. J.
- Seis, 2 *pr. s.* seest, 54, 86.
- Sek-cloth, sack-cloth, 109. J. has *sek*, sack; from Icel. *sekkir*.
- Seke, *a.* sick, ill, 58.
- Sekirnesse, security, 71; Sekernesse, 5; Sekernes, 174. J.
- Seknesse, sickness, 111.
- Self, *s.* same material, 161.
- Sely, *a.* seasonable, fit, 185; innocent, simple, 134; poor, miserable, 14, 44, 169. See *sely*, *sely* in J. A.S. *selig*.
- Sen, *conj.* since, 13, 26, 38, 57, 144. J.
- Senatoure, senator, 3.
- Sene, *v.* to see, 178.
- Sentence, opinion, 149. So in Chaucer.
- Septre, sceptre, 107.
- Seruand, servant, 113; Seruandis, *pl.* 86, 184.
- Seruus, service, 119.
- Set, *v.* set, appoint, 38; Setten, *v.* set, bind, 37; Set, *pt. s.* placed, 5.
- Sew, *imp. s.* follow, p. 54, l. 4.
- Seyne, *v.* say, 27, 38, 42, 98.
- Shapith, *imp. pl.* shape ye, provide, 102. This use of the plural implies respect.
- Signifere, the zodiac (lit. sign-bearer), 76. J.
- Signis, *pl.* signs of the zodiac, 76.
- Sike, *v.* sigh, 44. J.
- Simplese, *s.* simpleness, 194. (Better *simplesse*.)

- Sitt, *pr. s.* sitteth, 196. So in Chaucer.
- Slake, *v.* cease (lit. slacken), 161.
- Slawe, *a.* slow, 155. J.
- Sleuth, sloth, 119. J.
- Slokin, *v.* slake, quench, 69, 168. J.
- Sloppare, *a.* slippery, 163. J. has *slippar*.
- Sluggart, *s.* sluggard, 58.
- Slungin, *pp.* slung, cast, 165.
- Smaragdyne, *s.* emerald, 155. Properly an adjectival form; from Lat. *smaragdus*.
- Smertis, *pr. s.* pains, 141. So in Chaucer.
- Snawe, snow, 67. J.
- So, that; Quhen so, when that, 118.
- Socoure, succour, 100.
- Sodayn, *a.* sudden, 40.
- Sodaynlye, *adv.* suddenly, 11; Sodaynly, 126.
- Soiurne, *s.* sojourn, abode, 113.
- Solemp[ni]t, *pp.* solemn, 79.
- Sone, *voc.* son, 149.
- Sone, soon, 75.
- Song, *pp.* sung, 54.
- Sonne, sun, 110.
- Sore, *s.* grief, 182.
- Soun, *s.* sound, 13, 152. So in Chaucer.
- Soyte, *s.* suit, livery, 64.
- Spangis, *pl.* spangles, 47. J.
- Spede, *v.* succeed, 70; help, assist (see note), 28; Speid, succeed, 186. J.
- Spede, *s.* success, 113. J.
- Spere, sphere, 76. J.
- Sperk, spark, 48.
- Spottis, *pl.* spots, 161.
- Sprad, *pt. pl.* spread, 21.
- Springis, *pr. pl.* spring, bud forth, grow, 119.
- Spurn, *v.* stumble, 185. See *Sporne* in J.
- Squerell, *s.* squirrel, 155.
- Stage, rank, place, 79.
- Stale, *s.* a prison, 169. J. The same word as *stall*. See below.
- Stallit, *pp.* placed, 170.
- Standar, *a.* always standing, 156. See note, p. 87. This use of the form in *-ar* (E. *-er*) as adjectival is imitated from Chaucer's Assembly of Fowles, where we find 'the *bilder* ook,' and 'the *shooter* ew.'
- Stant, *pr. s.* stands, 167; consists, 15. So in Chaucer.
- Starf, *pt. s.* died, 139. See Steruen.
- Steik, *imp. s.* shut, p. 54, l. 17.
- Stellifyit, *pp.* made into a star, 52 So in Chaucer. J.
- Stent, 1 *pt. s.* stopped, 5; *pt. pl.* ceased, 35. J.
- Stere, helm, 195; control, guidance, 130. J.
- Stere, *v.* steer, guide, 194. J.
- Stereles, *a.* without a helm, 15. From Chaucer.
- Sterre, star, 99; Sterres, *pl.* 1.
- Steruen, *v.* die, 102. See Starf. J.
- Stond, *v.* stand, 88.
- Stound, *s.* time, 53; hour, 118. J.
- Stramp, *imp. s.* tramp, trample, p. 51, l. 19. (It can hardly be right; see note, p. 96).
- Stranger, *adv.* more severely, 68. J. has *strang*.
- Strangest, strongest, 149.
- Straucht, *adv.* straight, 158; Straught, 126, 151. J.
- Strayte, *a.* strict, 25. See *Strat* in J.
- Strenth, strength, 71. J.
- Strowit, *pp.* strewn, 65.
- Styntith, *pr. pl.* cease, 118; Stynt, 1 *pt. s.* ceased, 53, 104; Stynten, 1 *pt. s.* (a false form, see note), 117. J.
- Suete, *a.* as *sb.*, happiness, 182.
- Sue[ue]nyng, *s.* dreaming, 174. See *Sueuin* in J. From A.S. *swefen*.
- Sufficiante, *a.* sufficient, 183.
- Suffisance, sufficiency, enough, 6, 16, 26.
- Suffise, *v.* endure, 140.
- Suich, such, 11.
- Suith, *s.* truth, p. 53, l. 12.
- Suld, *pt. s.* should, 15. J.
- Suoun, in a swoon (orig. a *pp.* = A.S. *swogen*), 73. See *Swoon* in my Etym. Dict.
- Superlatiue, *a.* most excellent, 197.
- Supplie, *s.* supply, aid, help, 15, 112.
- Surcote, *s.* upper garment, 160. "*Surcot*, an upper kirtle, or garment worn over the kirtle;" Cotgrave. Quite distinct from the use of the word given in J.
- Surmounting, *pres. pt.* aspiring, 87.
- Suspect, *pp.* suspected, 137.
- Suth, *s.* truth, 137. J.
- Syne, *adv.* afterwards, 192. J.
- Tabartis, *pl.* tabards, cloaks, *i.e.*, clothing of feathers, 110. Cf. 'Birds of a feather flock together.' Chaucer has *tabard*.
- Take, *pp.* taken, 90; Tak, 193.
- Takenyng, *s.* taken, 176.

- Takin, token, 118; Takyn, 41, 180. J.
- Thame, them, 78.
- Than, *adv.* then, 4, 63. J.
- The, *pron. acc.* thee, 15, 129; *dat.* to thee, 106.
- Theffect, the effect, the result, 141. So in Chaucer.
- Theire, *error for* Thir, those, 6.
- There as, where that, 113.
- Thesiphone, Tisiphone (one of the furies); *by error for* Terpsichore (one of the muses), 19.
- Thidderwart, thitherwards, 185. J.
- Thilke, that, 5, 119.
- Thir, *pron.* those, 56, 79, 104; these, 10, 51. In st. 6 read *thir* for *theire*. J.
- Tho, *pron.* those, 39, 88, 144. Wrongly explained as "these" in J.
- Tho, then, 12, 67; As tho, as at that time, 2. J.
- Thraldom, servitude, 183; Thraldome, 28. See *Thrillage* in J.
- Thrall, slave, 41; prisoner, 38; Thralis, *pl.* thralls, 39.
- Thrawe, *s.* time, short time, little while, 35, 45, 67. J.
- Thrist, thirst, 69. J.
- Throu, *prep. as v.* (go) through, penetrate, 63.
- Throwe, *v.* drive, 17.
- Tidingis, *pl.* tidings, 162.
- Tiklyng, *s.* tickling, light motion, 21.
- Tippit, *pp.* tipped, 157.
- Tissew, *s.* thin (white) under-garment, 49. Cotgrave gives *tissu* in the sense of a "head-band of woven stuffe."
- To, *prep.* for, 116; To mynd, to my remembrance, 2; To suich deleyte, for such a delight, so delightful, 49.
- To, too, 61.
- To cum, to come, future, 14. Written *tocum*.
- Tofore, *prep.* before, 103. J.
- Tofore, *adv.* beforehand, 1, 2, 119. J.
- To-forowe, *adv.* before, 23, 49; heretofore, 105.
- To-gider, together, 124; Togidder, 68. J.
- Tolter, *a.* tottery, unstable, 9; *adv.* unsteadily, 164. See *Totter* in my Etym. Dict.
- Tong, language, 7.
- Toure, tower, 40.
- Toward, *prep.* as regards, 46.
- Towardis, towards, 104.
- To-wrye, *v.* turn, twist about, 164. Wrongly given in J. under *Wry*. It is obviously a compound verb, with the prefix *to-*; cf. "distorqueo, *ic to-writhe*," *Ælfric's Glossary*, ed. Zupitza, p. 155.
- Traist, *v.* trust, 130. J.
- Translate, *v.* transform, change, 8.
- Trauaile, *s.* toil, 69, 70.
- Trauaile, *v.* travel, toil, 16; 1 *pr. s.* toil, 70.
- Trauerse, screen, 90; Trevesse, 82. J.
- Tressis, *pl.* tresses, 1.
- Trety, treatise, 18. J.
- Trevesse; see Trauerse.
- Trowe, 1 *pr. s.* trow, believe, 36; 2 *pr. pl.* 11.
- Tueyne, *a.* two, 42, 75.
- Tuke, 1 *pt. s.* took, 13, 124.
- Turment, *s.* torment, 19.
- Turture, *s.* turtle-dove, 177. J.
- Twiggis, *pl.* twigs, 54.
- Twinklyng, *s.* twinkling, 163.
- Twise, *error for* Twies (*dissyllabic*), twice, 25.
- Twistis, *pl.* twigs, 33, 119. J.
- Twynklyng, *pres. pt.* twinkling, 1. But it is rather to be taken as put for *twynklen*, *pr. pl.* (they) twinkle.
- Tyde, *s.* time, 160.
- Tyme, time; Be tyme, betimes, in good time, 122.
- Vale, *v.* descend, 172. Short for *avale*. Cotgrave has "*avaller*, to let, put, lay, cast, fell down, to let fall down."
- Variance, *s.* contradiction, 161.
- Variant, *a.* varying, variable, 137. J.
- Vere, spring, 20. J.
- Verray, *a.* true, 5; *adv.* very, 169.
- Vertew, power, 74; Vertu, powerful influence, 20.
- Vexit, *pp.* vexed, 174.
- Vgly, *a.* ugly, 162.
- Viage, voyage, 15. J.
- Virking, *s.* working, influence, control, 188. Bad spelling of *wirking*.
- Visioun, *s.* vision, 175.
- Vmbre, *s.* shadow, shade, 134. J.
- Vnaffraid, *a.* un-afraid, fearless, 35.
- Vncouth, *pp.* unknown, 63, 66, 113.
- Vncouthly, *adv.* strangely, 9.
- Vnderstond, *pp.* understood, 127. Chaucer has *vnderstonde* (with final *e*) as a *pp.* in C. T. 4940.
- Vndertake, *pp.* undertaken, 63. Short for *undertaken*; the form is Southern; the Northern form is *vndirtan* (Barbour).

- Vnicorne, *s.* unicorn, 155.
 Vnkawin, *pp.* unknown, 105; *ill spelt*
 Vnkawing, it being unknown (to me), 45.
 Vnknyghtly, *a.* unknightlike, disgraceful, 55.
 Vnnethis, *adv.* scarcely, 98. See *uneth* in J.
 Vnquestionate, unquestioned, 125.
 Vnrypit, unripened, 14.
 Vnsekernesne, insecurity, 15.
 Vnsekir, *a.* insecure, 6. See *unsikker* in J.
 Voce, voice, 74, 83. J.
 Void, *a.* empty, 164.
 Voidis, *pr. s.* dispels, 155. "*Vuider*, to void, evacuate, empty, exhaust, dispatch, make an end of;" Cotgrave.
 Vre, fortune, luck, hap, 10. J. See my Glossary to Barbour's Bruce. O. F. *cur*, from Lat. *augurium*.
 Vschere, usher, door-keeper, 97.
 Vtrid, *pp.* uttered, 132. See note. Chaucer has the infin. *utren*, C. T. 16302.
 Wag, *v.* move, shake, 60.
 Waile, *v.* bewail, 122.
 Wald, 1 *pt. s.* would, 11; 2 *pt. s.* wouldst, 167; *pt. s.* would, 160; *error for* Nald, would not (see note), 140. J.
 Walk, *v.* walk, 177.
 Walking, *pres. pt.* waking, 173. J.
 Walowit, *pp.* withered, p. 54, l. 11. See note, pp. 95, 96.
 Wan, *pt. s.* won, 5.
 Wandis, *pl.* rods, 31. Cf. *wand*, a fishing-rod, in J.
 Wanting, *s.* lack, loss, 86.
 Wantis, 2 *pr. s.* lackest, 169; *pr. s.* lacks, 15. Spelt *vantis* in Barbour.
 Ward, *s.* ward, guardianship, 25.
 Ware, *a.* wary, 164. Better *war*, as in Barbour.
 World, world, 26, 122; great number, 82; Warldis, *gen.* world's, 3. J.
 Warldly, *a.* worldly, mortal, 44, 51. J.
 Wate, 2 *pr. s.* knowest, 129; *pr. s.* knows, 60. "Thou *vait*," thou knowest, occurs in the Complaint of Scotland; see J., s.v. *Wait*.
 Wawis, *pl.* waves, 16, 24, 100. J.
 Wayke, *a.* weak, 14, 148. See *Wait* in J. Icel. *veikr*.
 Wede, *s.* weed, garment, robe, 81. See *weed* in J.
 Wedowis, *s. gen.* widow's, 156. J. See note, p. 87.
 Weill, *s.* wealth, riches, p. 54, l. 3. See *Wele*.
 Wele, *adv.* well, 14, 53, 64; *Wele* is him, it is well for him, 133. Cf. "*Well* is thee;" and see *Wele* is in J.
 Wele, *s.* weal, 39; good fortune, 169. J.
 Weltering, *pres. pt.* rolling, 24; tossing, 100. J.
 Weltering, *s.* rolling, 163.
 Werdes, *pl.* weirds, fates, lots, 9; Werdis, *gen. pl.* of fates, 169. J.
 Were, *pt. subj.* were, 22; would be, 53, 143.
 Werely, *a.* warlike, bristling, 155. J. gives two other examples of the sense 'warlike'; but not this one.
 Werit, *pt. s.* wore, 160. Chaucer has *werede*, C. T. 75.
 Weye, *v.* weigh, 120. Read, *3e aughten maist weye*, ye ought most to weigh, or regard, or pay heed to.
 Wight, *s.* wight, person, 42, 140. See *Wicht* in J.
 Will, *pr. s.* desires, 106; Will thame translate, wants to transform itself, 8. *Eche estate* is taken as having a plural force.
 Wilsum, *a.* wandering, straying, 19. See *Wilsum* in J. (given under *Will*); and see *Will of red* in Barbour.
 Wirken, *v.* afflict, 68. See *Wark* in J.
 Wise, *s.* way, 117; manner, 97. So in Chaucer.
 Wist, 1 *pt. s.* knew, 76; 2 *pt. s.* knewest, 14. See *Witt*. (I think examples of *thou wist* are scarce.)
 With, *prep. used in close connection with a verb*; Gouverne with my will, govern my will with, 16; Hir with to glad, to gladden her with, 190 (cf. 174); To schorten with thy sore, to shorten thy pain with, 111.
 Witt, *v.* know, be aware, 128. See *Wate*, *Wist*. J.
 Woke, 1 *pt. s.* woke, 174.
 Wolf, *s.* wolf, 157.
 Womanhede, womanhood, 117.
 Wonder, *adv.* wonderfully, very, 96. See *Wondir* in Barbour.
 Wonne, *pp.* won, 34. See *Wan*.
 Worschip, *s.* honour, 136, 142. J.
 Wortis, *pl.* herbs, 156.
 Wote, 1 *pr. s.* wot, know, 47; *pr.*

- knows, 44; Wostow, 2 *pr. s.* thou dost know, 59. See Wate.
- Wrangit, *pp.* wronged, 92. J.
- Wrechit, *a.* wretched, 167.
- Wrest, *pp.* wrested, tortured, 10. A.S. *wræstan*.
- Wrething, *s.* turning, changing of fortune, 146. See Writh.
- Wring, *v.* wring the hands, lament, 57.
- Writh, *v.* turn about, govern, wield, direct (lit. writhe), 107; turn aside, remove, 122. Most likely the author was thinking of Chaucer's tr. of Boethius, bk. 5, prose 3, where we find: "for yif that they myghten *wrythen* away in other manere than thei ben purueyed," *i.e.*, for if things could be turned about (so as to fall out) in another manner from that which they were intended or foreseen, &c.
- Writt, *v.* write, 182.
- Wroght, *pp.* wrought, made, 77.
- Wrokin, *pp.* wreaked, avenged, 69. J.
- Wrye; On wrye, awry, aside, 73. On *wry* is in Barbour's Bruce, iv. 705.
- Wyle, wile, plan, device, 2.
- Wyre, wire, 1.
- Wyte, *ger.* blame, 90. See note. J.
- Y-, *prefix; the same as I-, prefix,* which see. Examples are Y-bete, Y-bought, Y-callit, Y-like, Y-thrugin, Y-wallit, where Y-bete is in the infinitive mood, and Y-like is an adverb.
- Ybete, *v.* beat, fall heavily, 116.
- Ybought, *pp.* bought, 36.
- Ycallit, *pp.* called, 170.
- Ylike, *adv.* alike, 70.
- Ymagynit, *pp.* imagined, 13.
- Ympnis, *pl.* hymns, 33. See Impnis. J.
- Ythrugin, *pp.* pushed together, thrust (upwards), 165. Given in J., *s.v.* *Thring*.
- Ywallit, *pp.* walled, 159.
- ȝa, yea, verily, 68. See *Ȝa* in J.
- ȝalow, yellow, 95.
- ȝate, *s.* gate, 125.
- ȝelde, 1 *pr. s.* yield, 52.
- ȝeris, *pl.* years, 22.
- ȝit, yet, 63.
- ȝok, *s.* yoke, 192.
- ȝond, *adv.* yonder, 57. See *Yound* (better *Yond*) in J.
- ȝone, *a.* yon, that, 88; those, 83.
- ȝong, *a.* young, 7.
- ȝoure alleris, of you all, 113. See note p. 81.
- ȝouth, youth, 6.

REMARKS UPON JAMIESON'S DICTIONARY.

A few quotations from the Kingis Quair (apparently Tytler's edition) are given in full in Jamieson's Dictionary; but the number of words which occur in the poem, and are not in the Dictionary at all, or are not there given *in the same sense*, is rather large. I have observed the following, some of which are so simple as hardly to be worth notice; still, I give the list in full, including words which, though given, are wrongly or insufficiently explained. Abandon (not in this sense), alblastrie (insufficiently explained), anewis (the same), aspert (the sense given is not right), aworth (given rightly, but with a doubt), coppin (given by error for *croppin*, *coppin* being a false form), defade (omitted), dert (quite wrongly explained), embroudin (omitted), fantise (the sense 'vain appearance' should be omitted), fatoure (om.), fell (om. in this sense), foringit (wrongly inserted for *foriugit*), foriugit (om.), forwalowit (wrong), fret (om.), gesserant (not explained), herbere (wrong), herknere (om.), keye (om.), lesty (om.), list, *s.* (om.), lokin (om.), marciall (om.), met (om., unless *mete* be wrongly explained), one (om.), ourehayle (om.), oure-straught (om.), out of (om.), pace, *s.* (om. in this sense), pas *or* pace, *v.* (om. in this sense), pall (om.), part, *v.* (om.), party (om. in this sense), plyte (om.), poetly (om.), porpapyne (om.), pouert (om.), poure (om.), prime (om.), process, *s.* (om.), pyke (om. in this sense), quhirl (om.), quhisle (om.), quho (om.), quikin (om.), recouerance (om.), recounsilit (om.), relesch, *v.* (om.), relesche, *s.* (om.), remyt, *s.* (om.), renewe, *s.* (om.), report, *s.* (om.), rethorike (om.), rody (om.), rynsid (om.), secretee (om.), sike (here *J.* is *right*, but Tytler's quoted opinion is *wrong*), simplesse (om.), sloppare (om.), smert, *s.* (om.), soun (only given as *sowne*), soyte (om.), sperk (om.), strow, *v.* (om.), thilke (om.), tho (wrong; it means 'those'), toforowe (om.), tolter (wrong, it is not a *verb*), towardis (om.), translate (om.), vertew (not in this sense), vncouth (only given as *unco*), vnsekernesse (om.), void, *v.* (om.), vtrid, *from* uttir, *v.* (om.), wail, *v.* (om.), want, wanting (om.), weye (om.), womanhede (om.), wonder, *adv.* (om.), wortis (om.), wrechit (om.), wring, *v.* (om.), wrething (om.), writh (om.), wry (wrong), ybete (om.), ȝis (only given as *ȝhis*), ȝon (only given as *ȝhone*). In several cases, the etymologies in *J.* need revision; thus *abate* is not of Scandinavian origin; *axis* is O. French *acces*, and unrelated to *ache*; *chamlotte* has no connection with *camel*; *fere*, a companion, has no connection with F. *foire*, a fair; *fery* has no connection with A.S. *feorh*; *fonde* is A.S. *fandian*, not *fundian*; *proyne* is from F. *provigner*, which *J.* sets aside; *schene* is not allied to *shine*, nor G. *schön* to G. *scheinen*; neither *wait* nor *wis* are infinitives. There are cases in which a quotation from the Kingis Quair might be added; e.g., under *traverse*, *welter*, *werely*, *wrest*. I venture to make these remarks because some of my corrections for the examples of words in Barbour have received attention, though a few were missed—viz., *allryn*, *assouerit*, *beleif*, *belene*, *betane*, &c.



